

MMI Navigation plus

Operating Instructions

Audi

Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

You have decided on the MMI Navigation plus - thank you very much for your confidence in us.

With your new Audi, you are receiving a vehicle with a state-of-the art system that allows you the change the vehicle's settings and operate the electronic equipment using a Multi Media Interface called the *MMI*.

We recommend that you read these Operating Instructions carefully so that you quickly get to know all of the functions and possibilities that the MMI offers and are able to make full use of them while driving.

Please note that these operating instructions are a supplement to your vehicle Owner's Manual and should only be used in conjunction with your current vehicle Owner's Manual.

Should you have any further questions about the MMI in your vehicle, please ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi.

AUDI AG

About this book 4

MMI components 5
Overview 5
Controls at a glance 5
MMI: Multi Media Interface 5
Traffic safety tips 6
Tips on caring for the MMI 6

Drives 7
Introduction 7
Overview of drives 7
CD/DVD mode general information . . 8
Memory card general information . . . 9
Jukebox 9
CD/DVD drive 10
CD changer 11
Memory card reader 13
Audi music interface 14
Aux-in connection 17

Cell phone prep 18
Introduction 18
Starting 18

MMI control panel 21
General operation 21
Switching on/off 21
Operating the system 21
MMI Display 22
Adjusting the volume 25
Adjusting the sound 26
Setting the time 27
Restarting the MMI (Reset) 28
Additional settings 28

Listening to the radio 31
Introduction 31
Starting radio mode 32
Activating your Satellite Radio service 32
Selecting frequency band 32
Selecting a station from the station/ preset list 33
Selecting the station 33
Storing stations 34
Moving stored stations 34
Additional settings 34

Playing media 37
Introduction 37
Starting Media mode 37
Selecting source 37
Selecting a folder 37
Selecting a track 38
Fast forward/rewind 38
Next/previous track or chapter 39
Track information 39
Repeat options 39
Shuffle 40
DVD main menu 40
DVD full screen display 40
DVD parental control 41
Pausing/continuing playback 42
Additional settings 42

Directory 44
Introduction 44
Opening the directory 44
Storing a new directory entry 44
Importing directory entries 45
Exporting address cards 46
Using a directory entry 47
Editing a directory entry 48
Managing profiles 50
Additional settings 52

Calling 53
Introduction 53
Starting Telephone mode 53
Dialing a telephone number 54
Answering/ignoring a call 55
Ending a call 56
Storing a phone number in the directory 56
Dialing stored phone numbers 56
Deleting local call lists 57
Bluetooth settings 57
Additional settings 58

Navigating 60
Introduction 60
Starting Navigation mode 61
Entering a destination 61
Stopping route guidance 66
Display 66
Storing a destination 67

Loading a destination 68
Additional settings 69

Calling up traffic information 74
Introduction 74
Calling up TMC traffic reports 74

Multifunction steering wheel . 75
General operation 75
Introduction 75
Adjusting the volume 75
Listening to the radio 76
Playing media 76
Calling 77
Navigating 80
Name tag 81

Voice recognition system 83
Voice recognition system 83
Introduction 82
General operation 84
Calling 85
Using addresses 86
Navigating 87

Index 90

This book contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this book in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This book describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of the editorial deadline. Individual items of equipment may not yet be available at the time of printing or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this book do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with telephone”. Optional equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as schematic images. Some of the details on your vehicle may look slightly different than illustrated.

There is a **Table of Contents** at the beginning of this book that lists all of the topics covered in this book in the order that they appear. There is also an alphabetically arranged **Index** at the end of this book.

All **directions** such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear” are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional equipment.

▶ The section continues on the next page.

® Registered trademarks are identified with ®. The absence of this symbol does not warrant unrestricted use of a term.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about avoiding damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Overview

Controls at a glance

The various MMI controls are located centrally in the cockpit and are easy to reach.

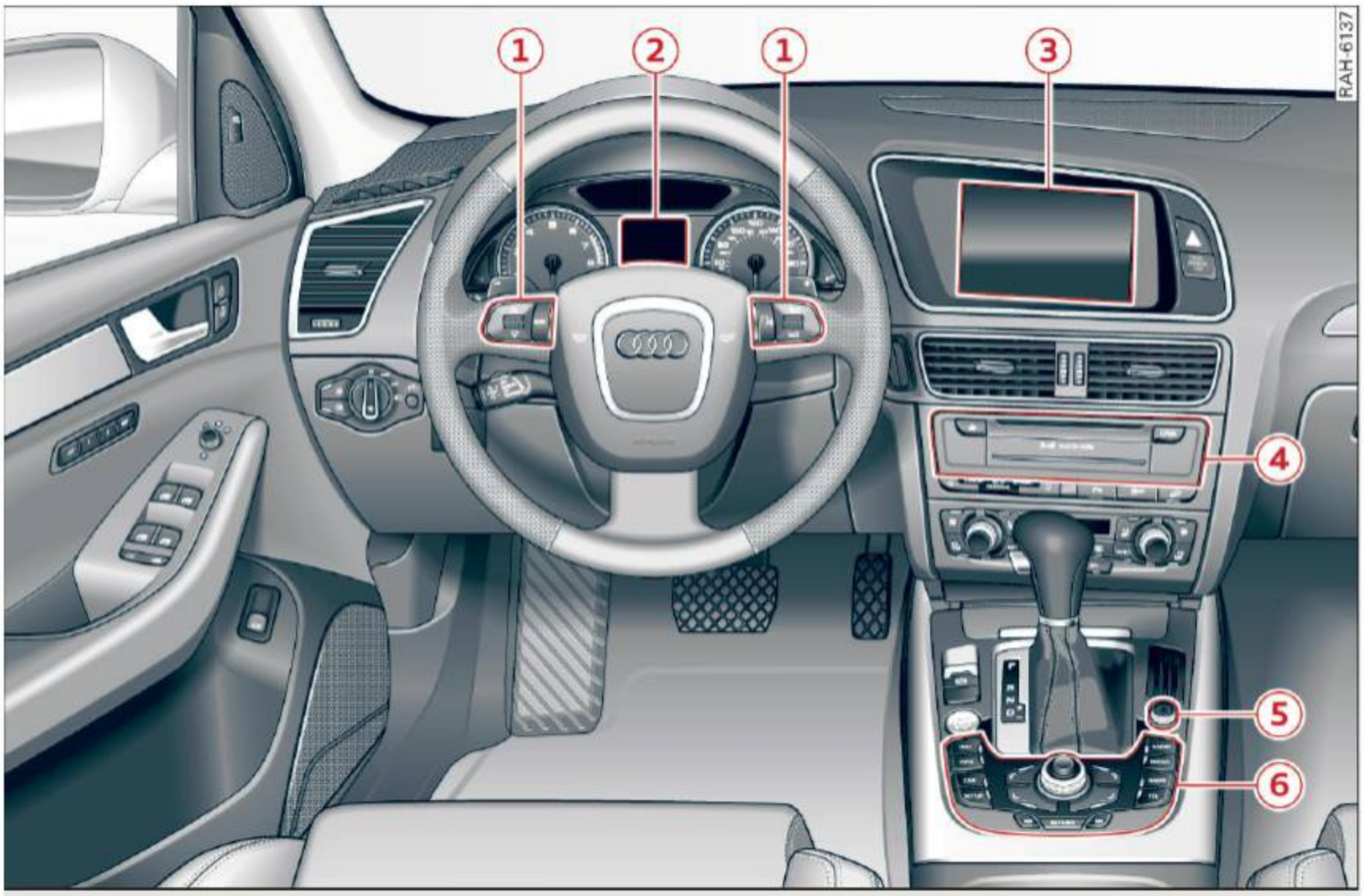


Fig. 1 MMI controls

① Multifunction steering wheel . . 75
② Driver information system 75
③ MMI Display 22
④ MMI drives 7
⑤ On/Off knob 21
⑥ MMI control panel 21

Tips

– Please note that this manual only describes MMI components. You can find additional information on operating your vehicle in your vehicle Owner's Manual.

MMI: Multi Media Interface

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various communication and entertainment systems in your Audi.

Through the MMI, you can listen to the radio and CDs and connect portable audio devices*. The MMI also has two memory card readers and an internal hard drive where you can store your favorite music. The navigation system can guide you to your destination using the shortest route, or you can add up to three stopovers. Or you can follow your own tour plan with up to nine intermediate destinations. Information about traffic conditions is taken into account during route guidance. You can also use many of the functions on your cell phone. The MMI also combines many driver assistance systems in your vehicle. ▶

There are several ways you can access the wide range of MMI functions in your vehicle. You can access all of the functions through the MMI control panel with its intuitive controls. You can also comfortably access the MMI functions that you use most frequently through the multifunction steering wheel or voice recognition system.

Traffic safety tips

Audi recommends only performing important functions such as entering a navigation destination when the vehicle is stationary. Always remember to stop using the MMI if necessary to ensure your safety and the safety of other drivers.

WARNING

- Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the MMI system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.
- Adjust the volume of the audio system so signals from outside the vehicle such as police and fire sirens can be heard easily at all times.
- Obey all applicable laws regarding use of telephones in vehicles.

Tips on caring for the MMI

The *Cleaning and Protection* chapter in your vehicle owner's manual provides instructions on caring for and cleaning the MMI components.

Drives

Introduction

The MMI is equipped with a CD/DVD drive, a CD changer*, two memory card readers and a Jukebox. You can also connect a portable audio device (such as an iPod or USB storage device) to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI control panel.

Overview of drives

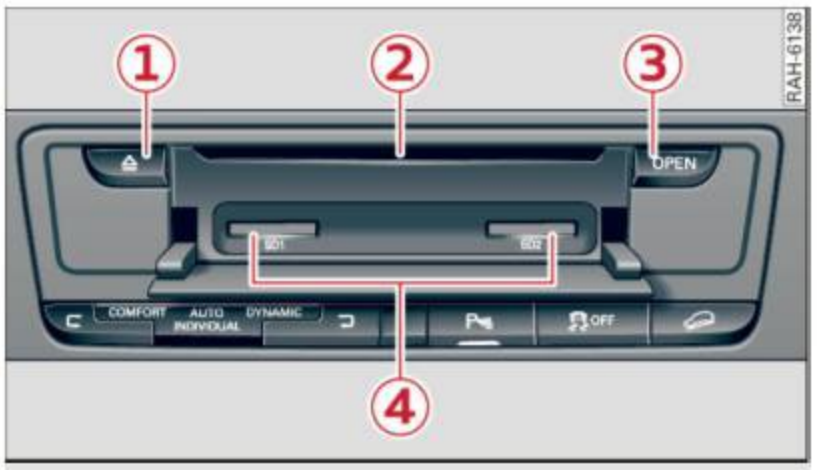


Fig. 2 MMI drives

① Eject button
② CD/DVD slot
③ OPEN button
④ Memory card reader

The MMI drives are located in the center console and are started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*. Opening the card reader cover with the OPEN button ③ ⇨ *fig. 2* provides access to both memory card readers.

The CD/DVD drive, Jukebox, memory card reader and USB storage device connection* support the following audio file properties:

	MP3 Files	WMA files	AAC files
Format	MPEG-1 Layer 3 MPEG-2 Layer 3	Version 7, 8 and 9	MPEG-4
Profile			LC - Low Complexity
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a
File system	Memory card and USB storage device: FAT or FAT32 method, only one partition CD/DVD drive: Joliet (CDs single session and multisession; DVDs only single session)		
Standard	ISO 9660-Level 1 and 2		
Bit rates	32 to 320 kb/s and variable bit rates in sampling frequencies from 8 to 48 kHz		
Playlist format	M3U and PLS		
Number of files	CD/DVD drive: max. 1000 files per medium and directory Jukebox: max. 3000 files total USB storage device and memory card: max. 4000 files total and max. 1000 files per directory		
Supported media	Memory card reader: Memory cards with a capacity up to 32 GB CD/DVD drive: Audio CDs, MP3/WMA/AAC CDs with a capacity up to 700 MB MP3/WMA/AAC DVDs in DVD-5, -9, -10, -14 and -18 formats, Standard DVD-V and DVD-V compatible DVD-A Audi music interface: iPod ⇨ *page 15*, USB storage device ⇨ *page 16*		
Metadata	ID3 tag up to 50 characters	WMA tag up to 50 characters	Metadata support

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Tips

- The Jukebox does not support playlists.
- The more files/folders/playlists there are on a medium, the longer it will take to load the audio files. Audi recommends using storage mediums that only contain audio files.
- To decrease the time it takes to load audio files, create subfolders (for example according to artist or album).
- To access audio files as quickly as possible, Audi recommends using SD cards that are class 4 or higher.
- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kb/s.
- When playing MP3 files with a variable bit rate, there may be a discrepancy between the play time displayed and real time.
- The MMI drives do not support files protected by DRM.
- The functionality of individual storage mediums may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities.
- Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection or CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard may not play or playback may be limited. CDs that conform to the standard have the logo “Compact Disc Digital Audio” on the CD.
- Multisession CDs may not play or playback may be limited. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs.
- Specific characters (such a those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the MMI system language and cannot always be guaranteed.
- Never store important data on the memory cards, Jukebox, CDs/DVDs or portable audio devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files.
- Please note that audio files are subject to copyright laws.

CD/DVD mode general information

This general information applies to CDs and DVDs.

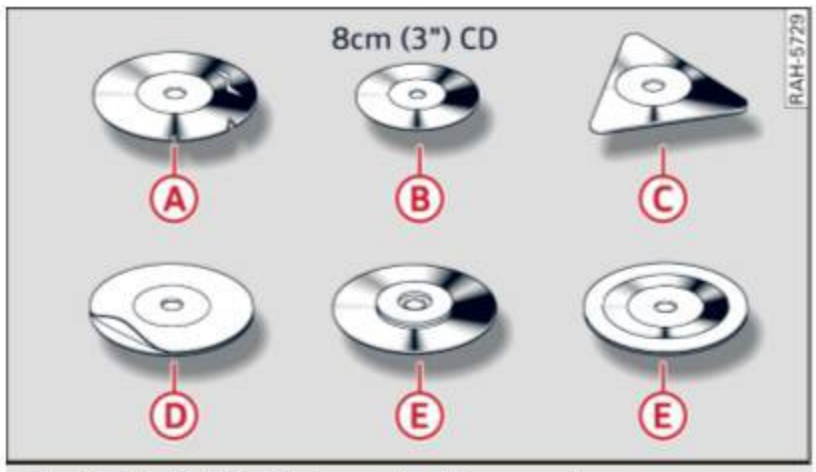


Fig. 3 CDs/DVDs that must not be used

Requirements for good sound quality

To ensure good, high-quality sound reproduction and to prevent damage to the drives or disc reading errors, please observe the following:

Ⓐ do not use damaged, dirty or scratched CDs.

Ⓑ do not use single CDs/DVDs (3 inch/8 cm).

Ⓒ do not use CDs/DVDs that are not round (Shape CDs/DVDs).

Ⓓ do not apply any labels on the CDs/DVDs.

Ⓔ do not use any protective rings.

Do not use protective CD/DVD film or stabilizer.

Cleaning drives, CDs and DVDs

Clean CDs/DVDs with a soft, lint-free cloth. Wipe the CD/DVD in a straight line from the center toward the outer edge. Dirty areas can be cleaned with a commercial CD cleaner or isopropyl alcohol. Never use gasoline, paint thinner, or record cleaner since they can damage CDs/DVDs.

Using laser equipment

Laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/ ▶

VDE 0837. The various types of audio equipment installed conform to safety class 1. The laser uses so little power or is shielded so there is no danger when it is used correctly.

Note

Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

- Always keep CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight.
- CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.
- Do not remove the cover from the device. The device does not contain any parts that the owner can repair.

Memory card general information

Both SD and MMC memory cards can be used.

The memory card reader has been tested with many of the products available on the market. However, in isolated cases it is possible that individual memory cards may not be recognized.

Always keep the memory card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles and other damage.

Note

Only use one-piece memory cards. If adapter cards (memory cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive.

Jukebox

Introduction

The MMI is equipped with a Jukebox that has 10 GB of memory available for audio files. Jukebox mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

Tips

- Please note that music files are subject to copyright law. Reset the Jukebox to the original default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.
- When the vehicle is at an altitude above approximately 3000 meters, the MMI hard drive shuts down temporarily to protect it. Navigation mode and the Jukebox are not available when that happens. All of the MMI functions will be available again as usual once you start the engine again at a location below 3000 meters.

Importing files

Audio files on a CD/DVD ROM in the CD/DVD drive, a USB storage device or a memory card can be imported.*



Fig. 4 Importing files

- ▸ Press the MEDIA function button.
- ▸ Press the **Import** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a source (such as **SD/MMC**, **CD/DVD** or **USB**) and press the knob. After checking the selected source, the MMI display shows a file structure. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **All files/folders** or select individual files for import and press the control knob.
- ▸ To start the import, turn the control knob in the top directory level to **Start import**. The progress of the import is shown in the MMI display.

You can select all of the files in a folder for import by turning the control knob to select the folder and then press and hold the knob.

The Jukebox automatically sorts music files during import into artist, album, title and genre folders using the stored metadata (such as ID3 tags).

If the Jukebox does not contain any files, a message appears in the MMI display with the option **Import new tracks**. Press the control knob to enter the import menu.

You can stop the import at any time by selecting **Cancel** with the control knob and pressing it. The import will also be cancelled if you switch off the MMI, remove the source (such as **SD/MMC**, **CD/DVD** or **USB**) or start the engine during the import. Tracks that have already been imported remain stored in the Jukebox.

Tips

- – Only import audio files when the engine is running.
- – Playing and importing audio files in the CD/DVD drive at the same time can lead to limitations in playback or importing. Audi recommends playing audio files in the CD/DVD drive once the import is completed successfully.
- – Importing from a CDDA (Compact Disc Digital Audio or typical store bought CD) Compact disc or DVD-A DVD Disc to the Jukebox is not supported.
- – Importing music files directly from an iPod to the Jukebox is not supported.
- – The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
- – Files that are already present are automatically overwritten when importing.
- – Files/tracks without stored metadata are listed as **unknown**. Audi recommends importing audio files with their accompanying metadata (such as ID3 tags).

Erasing files

Requirement: The media mode must be activated ⇨ *page 37* and the Jukebox must contain audio files.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete jukebox** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **All files/folders** or select individual files or folders for import and press the control knob.
- ▸ To erase selected files/folders, turn the control knob in the top directory level to **Start deletion** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob. The progress of the deletion is shown in the MMI display.

You can select all of the files in a folder for deletion by turning the control knob to select the folder and then press and hold the knob. Jukebox playback stops during the deletion process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Tips

If functionality is restricted, reset the Jukebox to the default settings ⇨ *page 29*.

CD/DVD drive

Introduction

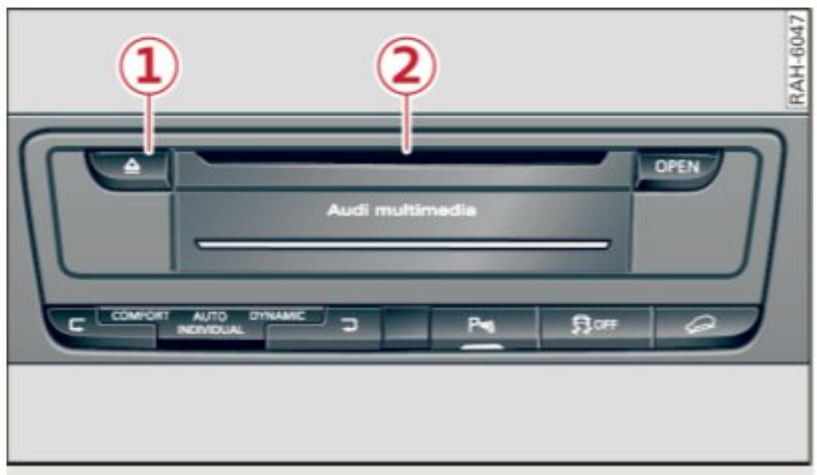


Fig. 5 CD/DVD drive

① Eject button
② CD/DVD slot

The CD/DVD drive is located in the center console. Audio CDs, CDs/DVDs with audio files and video DVDs can be loaded in the CD/DVD drive. CD/DVD mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

Loading a CD/DVD

Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.

- Make sure there is no CD/DVD in the drive ② ⇨ *page 10, fig. 5*.
- Slide the CD/DVD with the writing facing up straight into the drive ②.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

- Press the eject button ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 5*. The CD/DVD is ejected.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within 12 seconds of ejecting it.

CD changer

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with CD changer

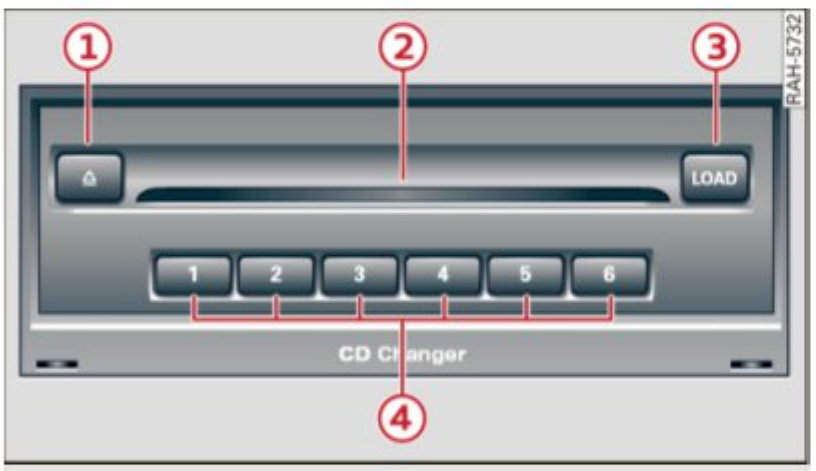


Fig. 6 CD changer

① Eject button
② CD slot
③ LOAD button
④ Position buttons with LEDs

The CD changer is located in the glove compartment. Audio CDs or MP3/WMA CDs can be loaded into the CD changer. CD mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

The CD changer supports the following file formats:

	MP3 Files	WMA files
Format	MPEG-1 Layer 3 MPEG-2 Layer 3	Version 7, 8 and 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma
Standard	ISO 9660-Level 1 and 2	
File system	Joliet (single session and multisession), UDF	
Number of files/ directories	Max. 255 files per directory, max. 255 directories, total of no more than 512 files and directories per medium	
Bit rates	32 to 320 kb/s and variable bit rate and variable bits in sampling frequencies from 8 to 48 kHz	

	MP3 Files	WMA files
Supported media	Audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs with a capacity of 700 MB	
Metadata	ID3 tag up to 30 characters	WMA tag up to 30 characters

Tips

– Please follow the instructions for handling CDs ⇨ *page 8*.
– The CD changer does not support playlists and files with DRM protection.
– The functionality of individual storage mediums may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs available and the various capacities.
– Audio CDs with copy protection or CDs that do not conform to the standard for audio CDs may not play or playback may be limited. CDs that conform to the standard have the logo “Compact Disc Digital Audio” on the CD.
– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kb/s.
– When playing MP3 files with a variable bit rate, there may be a discrepancy between the play time displayed and real time.
– Multisession CDs may not play or playback may be limited. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs.
– Specific characters (such a those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.
– Please note that audio files are subject to copyright laws.

Loading a CD

Applies to vehicles: with CD changer

Six CDs can be loaded in the CD changer.

Loading a CD

▸ Press the LOAD button ③ ⇨ *page 11, fig. 6*. The LEDs at the side of the CD slot ② blink green when the CD changer is ready to be loaded.
▸ Slide the CD straight into the slot ② with the label facing up. The CD is automatically loaded in the next empty position in the CD changer. The LED in the corresponding button ④ illuminates.

Loading multiple CDs at the same time

▸ Press and hold the LOAD button ③ for more than two seconds.
▸ Wait until the green LEDs at the side of the CD slot ② begin blinking.
▸ Slide the CDs one at a time straight into the slot ② with the label facing up. The CDs are loaded automatically in the next empty position in the CD changer.
▸ Press the LOAD button to interrupt the loading process.

Loading the CD in a specific empty position

▸ Press the LOAD button ③. The LED for the next empty position ④ blinks.
▸ Press the button.
▸ Wait until the green LEDs at the side of the CD slot ② begin blinking.
▸ Slide the CD straight into the slot ② with the label facing up.

Loading a CD into a specific occupied position

▸ Press the LOAD button ③. The LED next the occupied position stays on.
▸ Press the button. The corresponding CD is ejected.
▸ Remove the CD from the CD slot ②.
▸ Slide the CD you would like to load straight into the CD slot ② with the label facing up.

If you press the LOAD button ③ a second time while all CDs are being loaded, the loading procedure stops. ▶

Tips

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– You cannot load the CD changer if the LED next to the CD slot is red.

Ejecting a CD

Applies to vehicles: with CD changer

Ejecting a CD

▸ Press the eject button ① twice to eject the current CD ⇨ *page 11, fig. 6*.
▸ To eject any of the CDs, press the eject button ① and then one of the blinking buttons ④.

Ejecting all CDs

▸ Press and hold the eject button ① for more than two seconds. All the CDs are ejected one at a time.

The CD is pulled back into the CD changer automatically if you do not remove it from the CD slot within 30 seconds after ejecting it.

Memory card reader

Introduction

The MMI is equipped with two memory card readers ⇨ *page 7, fig. 2*. SC/MMC memory cards can be loaded in the memory card reader.

Memory card mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Tips

Please follow the instructions for handling memory cards ⇨ *page 9*.

Inserting a memory card

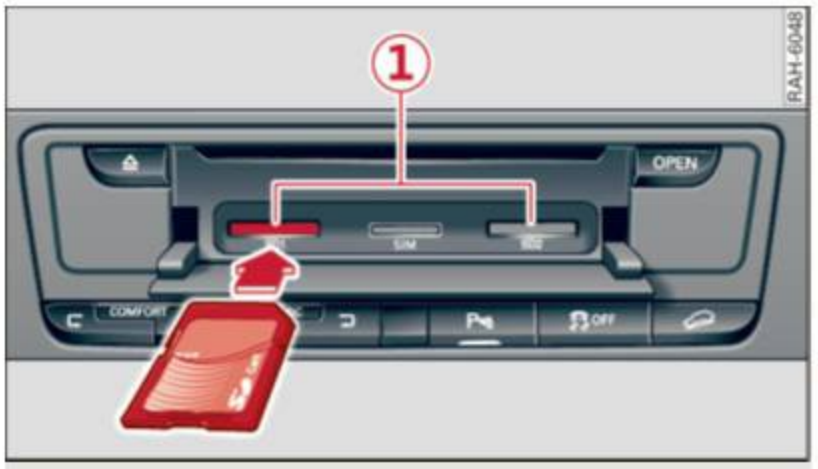


Fig. 7 Inserting a memory card

▸ Press the OPEN button. The card reader cover opens.
▸ Slide the memory card in the card reader slot with the label side up (contact surface down) ① ⇨ *fig. 7*. The angled corner of the memory card must point toward the right front.
▸ Then push the memory card into the slot until it clicks into place.

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Removing a memory card

▸ Press on the memory card briefly. The card is released from the slot.
▸ Remove the memory card.

Audi music interface

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface

Various portable audio devices can be connected to the Audi music interface.

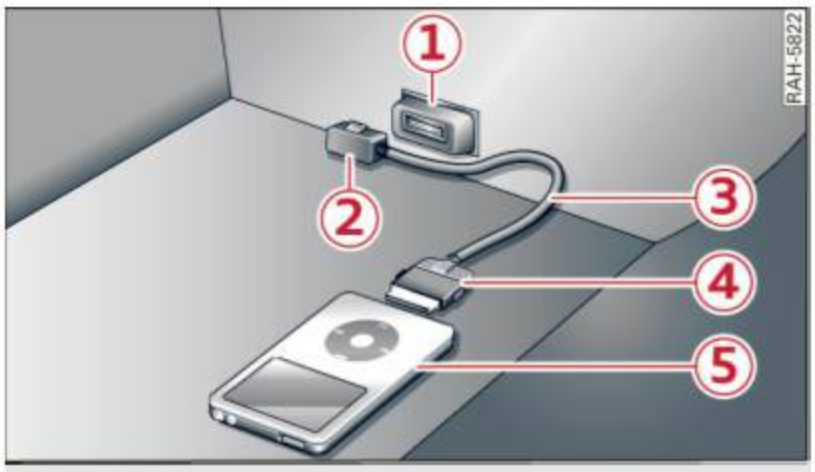


Fig. 8 Audi music interface with iPod adapter cable and iPod

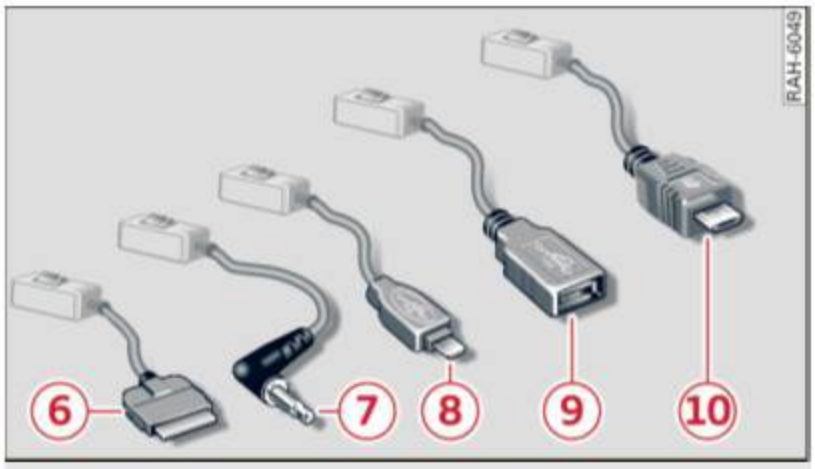


Fig. 9 Audi music interface: Adapter cable

① Interface on Audi music interface
② Jack for connecting to the Audi music interface
③ Adapter cable* (such as iPod adapter cable*)
④ iPod jack on iPod adapter cable*
⑤ iPod
⑥ iPod adapter cable*
⑦ 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable*
⑧ Mini USB adapter cable*
⑨ USB adapter cable*
⑩ Micro USB adapter cable*

The Audi music interface is located in the glove compartment. The Audi music interface is started and operated using the MEDIA function button ⇨ *page 37*.

You can connect a portable audio device such as an MP3 player to the Audi music interface using a special adapter cable*. You can purchase adapter cables* from your authorized Audi dealer or an electronics store.

Note

– Extremely high or low temperatures which can occur inside vehicles can damage portable audio devices or affect their performance. Never leave a portable audio device in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.
– Handle the adapter cable carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Tips

For up-to-date information on the Audi music interface, visit www.audiusa.com/mp3 (www.audicanada.ca/mp3).

Connecting the adapter cable to the Audi music interface

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and adapter cable

▸ Open the glove compartment.
▸ Connect the adapter cable to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 14, fig. 8*.
▸ Then connect the portable audio device to the Audi music interface.

Disconnecting the adapter cable from the Audi music interface

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and adapter cable

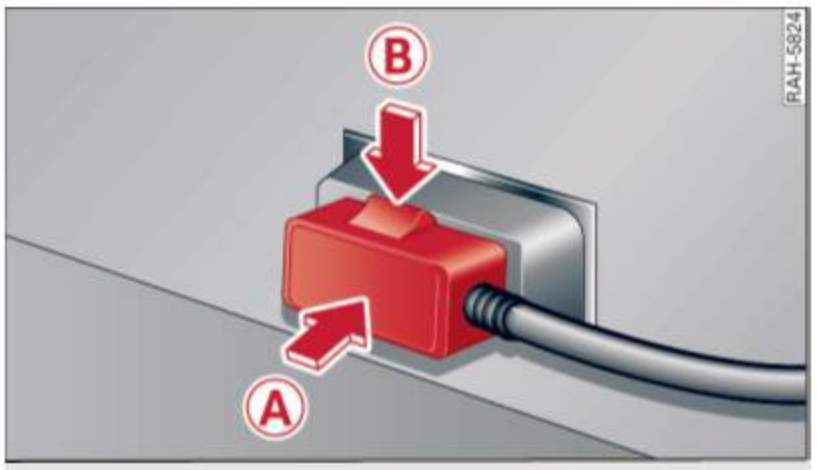


Fig. 10 Adapter cable: releasing the jack on the Audi music interface

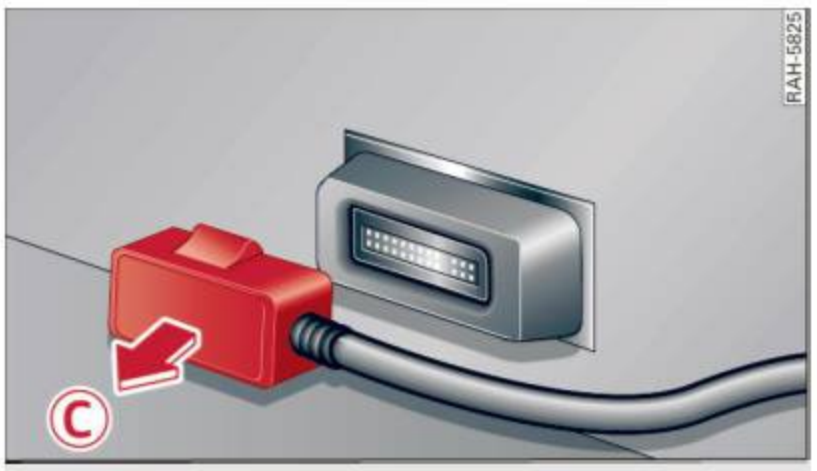


Fig. 11 Adapter cable: removing the released jack from the Audi music interface

Requirement: The glove compartment must be open.

- ▸ Press the jack Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 10* into the Audi music interface* while pressing the release catch Ⓑ on the jack down. The jack is released.
- ▸ Hold the release catch down while pulling the jack out of the Audi music interface Ⓒ ⇨ *fig. 11*.

Note

Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.

Connecting an iPod using the iPod adapter cable

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and iPod adapter cable

The iPod is connected to the Audi music interface with the iPod adapter cable.

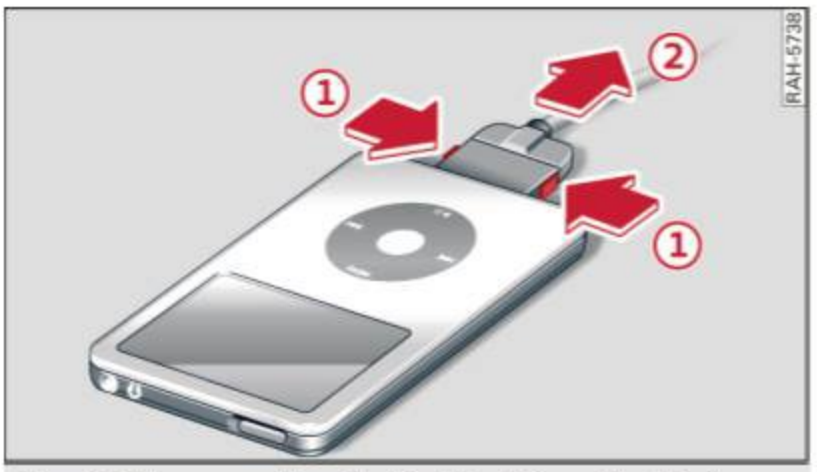


Fig. 12 Disconnecting the iPod jack from the iPod

Connecting the iPod jack

- ▸ Connect the iPod adapter cable* to the iPod.

Disconnecting the iPod jack

- ▸ Press the buttons ① to release the catch ⇨ *fig. 12*.
- ▸ Carefully pull the jack out of the iPod ②.

When the vehicle ignition is on, the iPod battery charges through the iPod adapter cable* once the iPod is connected to the Audi music interface.

The following iPods can be connected to the iPod adapter cable*:

– iPod mini - (version 1.3.0 and higher)
– iPod nano
– iPod 4G - fourth generation (version 1.2.1 and higher)
– iPod 5G - fifth generation Video
– iPod 6G - sixth generation classic
– iPod touch
– iPhone

Other iPod versions (such as the iPod shuffle) cannot be connected with the iPod adapter cable*. These can be connected as portable audio devices with the optional 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable* ⇨ *page 16*. ▶

Connect the adapter cable to the Audi music interface first and then connect the portable audio device to the Audi music interface.

The MMI does not support the following iPod functions:

– Rating music tracks
– Skipping to a certain place in a track
– Adding tracks to the “On-the-go” playlist
– Displaying the “Compilations” folder. Also, tracks marked with “Part of a Compilation” are not entered into the artist list if the compilation was activated in the iPod.
– Marking viewed/new Podcasts

Tips

– Only use the adapter cable with the number 4F0 051 510 K to connect an iPod.
– Problems with the iPod can affect operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod if this is the case (refer to the iPod instruction manual).
– For additional information on operating the iPod through the MMI, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.
– Refer to the iPod instruction manual for important information on operating your iPod.
– Audi recommends updating the iPod software to the latest version.

Connecting a portable audio device with the USB/Mini/Micro USB adapter cable

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and USB/Mini/Micro USB adapter cable

You can connect various USB storage devices to the Audi music interface with a USB/Mini/Micro USB adapter cable.

The Audi music interface supports USB storage devices from “USB Device Subclasses 1 and 6”. The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its “USB Device Subclass”.

The following USB storage devices are supported:

– USB sticks
– USB MP3 players that do not require any special driver software
– External USB flash memory
– External USB hard disks (HDD) - 1", 1.8", 2.5" - drives with an operating/continuous current of 500 mA maximum

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

For instruction on operating the USB storage device through the MMI, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.

Tips

– MTP players and USB hubs are not supported.
– Do not use USB extension cables or adapters. They may affect the functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for portable audio devices that do not meet the USB 2.0 specification.
– The USB storage device connection was tested with a variety of products on the market. However, it is possible that some memory cards may not be recognized.
– An iPod cannot be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter cable*. An iPod adapter cable* ⇨ *page 14* must be used.

Connecting a portable audio device with the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable

You can connect portable audio devices (such as MP3 players) to the Audi music interface with the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable.

▸ Insert the 3.5 mm stereo jack in the headphone socket on the portable audio device. Audio playback takes place through the vehicle sound system.

If the external audio input or Audi music interface is already selected as the **Source** ⇨ *page 37, fig. 35*, you may hear static when connecting or disconnecting the 3.5 ▶

mm stereo jack or the audio device connected to the stereo jack. To avoid this static, either mute the portable audio device ⇨ *page 25* or switch to another audio source (such as radio ⇨ *page 32* or CD) before connecting or disconnecting the device.

Tips

We recommend adjusting the volume of the portable audio device to approximately 70 percent of the maximum output. The volume can be adjusted (for example, at the radio volume) ⇨ *page 42*.

Aux-in connection

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Aux-in connection

A portable audio device is connected to the Aux-in connection with a 3.5 mm stereo jack.

The Aux-in connector is located in the center armrest. It is compatible with portable audio devices with a 3.5 mm stereo jack. Correct function of all portable audio devices cannot be guaranteed.

Note

Extremely high or low temperatures which can occur inside vehicles can damage portable audio devices or affect their performance. Never leave a portable audio device in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

For information on operating the audio device, see the manufacturer's instructions.

Connecting or removing an audio device

Applies to vehicles: with Aux-in connection

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- ▸ Connect the audio device with a 3.5 mm stereo jack* and insert the extension cable in the Aux-in connection.
- ▸ Press the MEDIA function button.
- ▸ Press the **Source** control button.
- ▸ Turn the knob to **external audio input** press it ⇨ *page 37*. **External audio source active** will appear in the MMI display when the device is recognized successfully.

Static can occur when connecting or disconnecting the 3.5 mm stereo jack. To avoid this static, either mute the portable audio device or switch to another audio source (such as radio or CD) before connecting or disconnecting the device.

You select audio files using the controls on the audio device. You can adjust the volume using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 25*, the **input level** function ⇨ *page 42*, the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 75* or directly on the audio device.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate a portable audio device while driving because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

- We recommend adjusting the volume of the portable audio device to approximately 70 percent of the maximum output.
- The vehicle battery discharges when the engine is stopped and the audio device is switched on.

Cell phone prep

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

A cell phone is paired with the cell phone prep via Bluetooth.

The factory-installed cell phone package in the vehicle allows you to connect particular GSM or CDMA cell phones via Bluetooth ⇨ *page 19*. Calls can be made wirelessly through the cell phone prep hands-free system. You can operate your cell phone through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 53*, multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 77* or voice recognition system ⇨ *page 83*.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that cell phones can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the cell phone antenna and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the cell phone in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the cell phone off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use voice recognition system ⇨ *page 83* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Note

- Obey all applicable laws regarding use of telephones in vehicles.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas where use of cell phones is prohibited.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas at risk for an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. They may include gas stations, equipment that stores or transports fuel or chemicals, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour or sawdust) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally switch your vehicle off.

Tips

- The telephone functions depend on whether your cell phone is compatible with the cell phone prep or not and if the cell phone service provider supports these functions.
- For up-to-date information on the cell phone prep, visit www.audiusa.com/telephone (www.audicanada.ca/telephone) or your authorized Audi dealer.
- The cell phone prep is designed for use in GSM and CDMA networks.

Starting

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Bluetooth must be activated to establish a Bluetooth connection between the cell phone prep and the cell phone. Your cell phone must be *visible to others* ⇨ *page 57*.

The cell phone must be paired one time with the cell phone prep in the vehicle. The steps required for this procedure depend on the cell phone you are using. First, the system searches for available Bluetooth devices within range ⇨ *page 19*.

Pairing Bluetooth-compatible devices

There must not be any other Bluetooth devices connected to the cell phone prep during the pairing procedure. The cell phone that will be paired must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device. Also follow the instructions displayed on your cell phone.

There may be several cell phones paired with the cell phone prep, but only one cell phone at a time can be actively connected to the cell phone prep. ▶

The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It also depends on the current circumstances and on interference with other devices.

Establishing and disconnecting the Bluetooth connection

An operational cell phone which has been bonded to the cell phone package is automatically connected after the ignition is switched on. For some cell phones you have to confirm the connection.

The Bluetooth connection is disconnected after the ignition key is removed.

Tips

For current information on pairing cell phones with the cell phone prep, visit www.audiusa.com/telephone (www.audi-canada.ca/telephone) or your authorized Audi dealer.

Searching for Bluetooth-compatible devices

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

There are two ways to search for Bluetooth-compatible devices.



Fig. 13 Searching for new cell phones

Requirement: The MMI Bluetooth function must be activated ⇨ *page 57*.

Searching for cell phones

- Make sure the Bluetooth in your cell phone is activated. Your cell phone must be visible to others.
- Press the TEL function button. The message **Please connect cell phone** appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to **Search for new cell phone** ⇨ *fig. 13* and press the knob. The available Bluetooth cell phones are shown in the MMI display.

Searching for Bluetooth devices

- Press the SETUP function button.
- Press the **Bluetooth** control button. The **Bluetooth** menu appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to **Find Bluetooth devices** and press the knob. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the MMI display.

The **Find Bluetooth devices** function shows all of the Bluetooth devices within range in the MMI display.

Tips

The MMI only recognizes some cell phones through the Find Bluetooth devices function.

Pairing a cell phone

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Bluetooth technology allows a cell phone to be connected wirelessly to the vehicle MMI.



Fig. 14 The cell phone is paired with the cell phone prep and connected.

Requirement: An available cell phone must be shown in the MMI display ⇨ *page 19*.

- Turn the control knob to a cell phone and press the knob.

- ▸ To pair the cell phone, turn the control knob to **Handsfree** and press the knob. A 4-digit PIN is shown on the MMI display.
- ▸ To enter the 4-digit PIN that is displayed, select **Yes**. Enter the PIN in the cell phone when the vehicle is stationary. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds, or
- ▸ To enter any 4- to 16-digit PIN, select **No**. Enter any 4- to 16-digit pin in the speller ⇨ *page 23*. Then enter that PIN in the cell phone when the vehicle is stationary. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Confirm the pairing on the cell phone if requested. The cell phone symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 14* appears in the status line of the MMI display when the pairing process is complete.

Tips

You can find additional information about connecting your cell phone in your cell phone operator's manual.

Directory entries

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The cell phone entries are automatically loaded in the MMI.



Fig. 15 Searching for an entry in the directory

Loading directory entries

The directory entries load automatically in the MMI after the ignition is switched on. This loading process can last several minutes and depends on the number of entries in the directory.

Directory entries can be stored in a general profile and in up to four personal profiles ⇨ *page 51*.

Displaying directory entries

The directory entries are displayed in alphabetical order and identified with a symbol:

① Local MMI memory
② SIM card
③ Cell phone

Private and business entries with land line, cell phone and fax categories can be saved in the address cards.

Tips

– The directory entry display in the MMI depends on the cell phone used.
– The directory entries from the cell phone may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many directory entries, entries with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.

General operation

Switching on/off



Fig. 16 On/Off knob

Vehicles without comfort key*

- ▸ To switch the MMI on, switch the ignition on. The menu for the last main function selected is displayed. The last selected audio/video source begins playing.
- ▸ To switch the MMI off, remove the ignition key. Your settings are saved.

Vehicles with comfort key*

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button to switch the MMI on ⇨ *page 21, fig. 17*.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice to switch the MMI off ⇨ *page 21, fig. 17*. Your settings are saved.

Manual operation

- ▸ Press the On/Off knob briefly to switch the MMI on ⇨ *fig. 16*.
- ▸ To switch the MMI off, press and hold the On/Off knob until the MMI switches off.

An MMI that has been switched off manually does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

The MMI can still be operated for approximately ten minutes after switching the ignition off. If you do not press any function button, control button, or the control knob on the MMI control panel within this time, the MMI automatically switches off again.

Tips

- With the engine not running and a low battery charge, MMI switches off automatically.
- If you only press the On/Off knob briefly, the selected audio source is muted ⇨ *page 25*.

Operating the system

Press and turn the buttons on the MMI control panel to perform the MMI functions.



Fig. 17 Buttons on the MMI control panel

① Function buttons

Press a function button to start an operating mode. For example, press the RADIO function button to start the **Radio** mode.

You can open additional settings for the active operating mode using the SETUP function button.

② Control knob with joystick

Turn the control knob to the left or right and press it to select a menu item in the MMI display. You can use the joystick to move the crosshairs in a map or to control the DVD menu ⇨ *page 24*. ▸

③ Control buttons

To access the function shown in one of the four corners of the display, press the control button corresponding to this display corner. For example, the upper right control button corresponds to the upper right corner of the display ⇨ *fig. 17*.

④ Return button

Press the RETURN button to cancel a selection you have not yet confirmed or to return to the next higher menu level.

⑤ Arrow buttons

Press the I◁◁ or ▷▷I button to select the previous/next radio station.

Press the ▷▷I button to select the next track on a CD or a connected iPod. Press the I◁◁ button within the first ten seconds a track is playing to return to the previous track and after ten seconds to return to the beginning of the current track.

Press and hold the I◁◁ or ▷▷I button while in CD mode to fast forward or rewind.

MMI Display

"Standard" menus

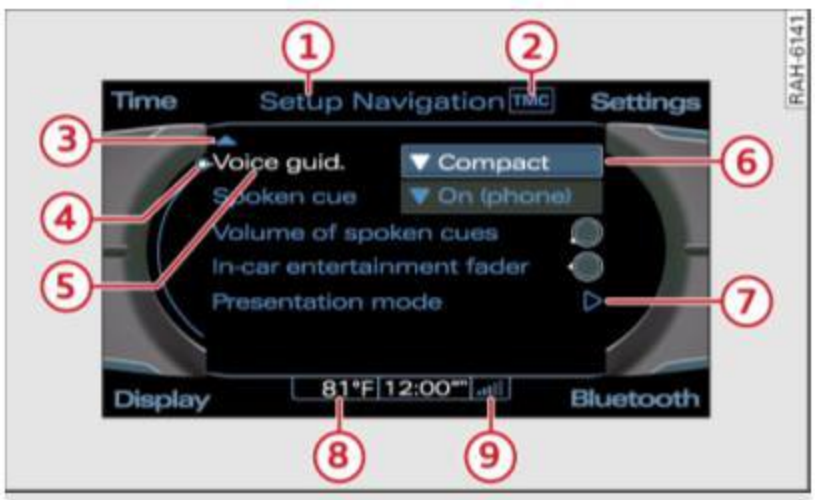


Fig. 18 Navigation Setup

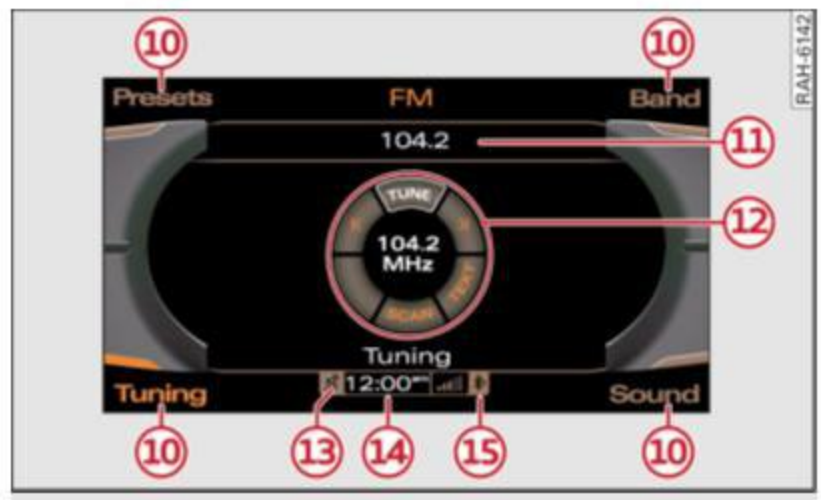


Fig. 19 Radio submenu

A menu appears in the MMI display after you press a function button ⇨ *page 21*.

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Title line	Selected mode (such as Radio ⇨ *fig. 19*) Setup display: Setup menu for the selected mode (for example Navigation Setup ⇨ *fig. 18*). On vehicles with the cell phone prep*, the cellular service provider is displayed.
②	TMC symbol	Reception of TMC traffic reports ⇨ *page 74*.
③	Arrows pointing up/down	Indicate there are additional menu items (scroll forward/back).
④	Cursor	Shows a line selected in a menu.
⑤	Selected text	A menu item you have selected has a white background.
⑥	Options box	Options for the menu item selected.
⑦	Arrow	Points to additional options or possible settings.
⑧	Temperature display	Temperature selected on vehicles with an automatic air conditioning system.
⑨	Signal strength bar*	Cell phone connection quality.

▶

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑩	Display corners	Show selectable functions. You perform the functions using the control buttons. The top right corner of the display corresponds to the top right control button.
⑪	Subtitle	Tells you about a selected option (e.g. radio station preference).
⑫	Control wheel	Is operated by turning and pressing the control knob.
⑬	Mute symbol	The active audio source is muted.
⑭	Time	Set time.
⑮	Bluetooth symbol*	Active Bluetooth connection.

Speller

You can enter addresses, navigation destinations and telephone numbers with the speller.

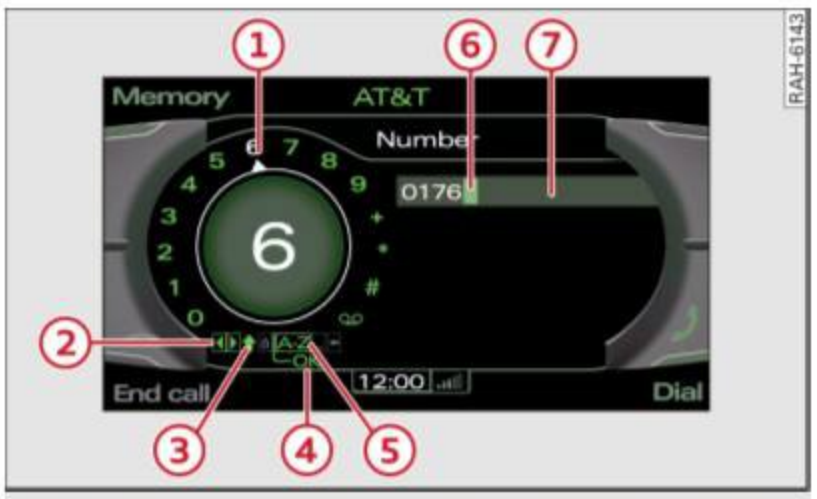


Fig. 20 Number speller: entering a telephone number

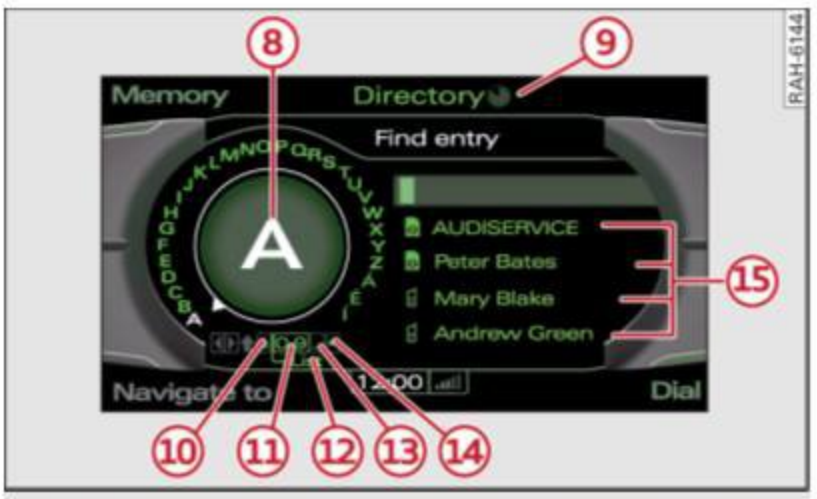


Fig. 21 Letter speller: searching for a directory entry

With some functions in the directory, it is necessary to enter letters or numbers in Telephone* or Navigation mode. The number speller ⇨ *fig. 20* or the letter speller ⇨ *fig. 21* appears in the display.

While you are making your entry, you can switch as needed from numbers to letters or from letters to numbers by turning the control knob **0-9** ⑪ ⇨ *fig. 21* or **A-Z** ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 20* and pressing the knob.

All of the symbols for entering letters and numbers are explained in the table below:

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Selection arrow	Puts a white background behind the selected element and shows it enlarged in the entry ring.
②	◀▶	Moves the cursor forward/backward in the entry field.
③	▲	Switches from lower case to upper case.
④	OK	Confirms the entry.
⑤	A-Z	Switches from number to letter entry.
⑥	Cursor	Marks the current editing position.
⑦	Entry field	Shows the current entry.

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑧	Entry ring	Shows the character selected with the selection arrow enlarged.
⑨	Update symbol	Indicates the data is updating.
⑩	â	Indicates a list with special characters depending on the language.
⑪	0-9	Switches from letter to number entry.
⑫	LIST	Shows a list of suggestions.
⑬	⎵	Inserts a space in the entry field.
⑭	⬅	Deletes the character to the left of the white highlighted cursor.
⑮	List with suggestions	Lists suggestions in alphabetical order.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols using the speller

For an overview of the speller, refer to ⇨ *page 23*.

Entering numbers, letters, and symbols

- ▸ Turn the control knob with the selection arrow ① ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20* to the letter, number or symbol. Your selection is shown enlarged in the entry ring ⑧ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 21*.
- ▸ To accept the letter, the number or the symbol, press the control knob. Your entry appears in the entry field ⑦ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20*.
- ▸ When you have entered all the digits, turn the control knob to **OK** ④ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20* and press the knob.

Deleting numbers, letters, and symbols

- ▸ Turn the control knob with the selection arrow to ⬅ ⑭ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 21*.
- ▸ To delete the last digit in the entry field, press the control knob.
- ▸ To delete all the digits in the entry field, hold the control knob down until no digits show in the entry field.

In some cases such as in the Navigation menu, the selection of letters may be limited to available entries. Only letters that are part of an available word can be selected.

Enter special characters such as the hyphen or period) with the number speller ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20*.

Joystick

You can move the crosshairs in a map or control the main menu for a video DVD with the joystick.

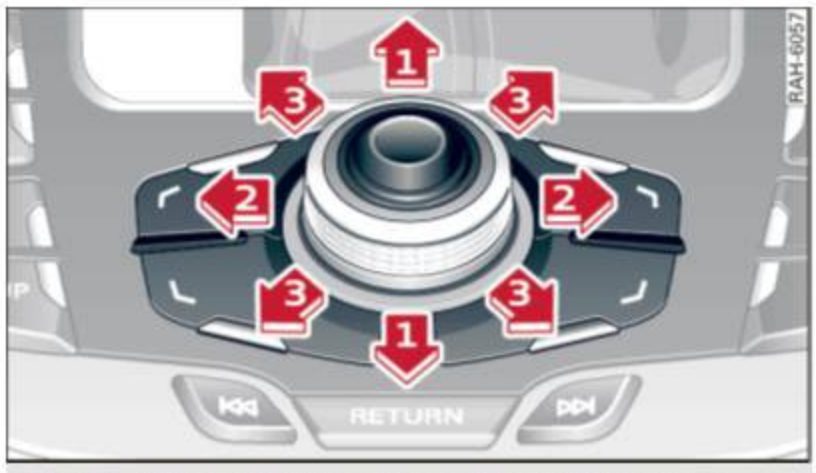


Fig. 22 MMI control panel: possible joystick movements

Requirement: A map must be visible in the MMI display ⇨ *page 66* or a video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

Moving the crosshairs in a map

- ▸ To move the crosshairs in a map vertically ① ⇨ *fig. 22*, move the joystick up or down.
- ▸ To move the crosshairs in a map horizontally ②, move the joystick to the right or left.
- ▸ To move the crosshairs in a map diagonally ③, move the joystick up or down to the right or left. ▶

Controlling the DVD main menu

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **MENU** (display main menu) ⇨ *page 40* and press the knob. The DVD main menu is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Move the joystick up or down ① or right or left ② to select a menu item.
- ▸ Press the control knob to confirm the menu selection. DVD mode continues.

Switching the MMI display on/off



Fig. 23 Switching the MMI display off

Switching the MMI display off

- ▸ Press the **Display** control button while in a setup menu.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Switch off display** ⇨ *fig. 23* and press the control knob. The display switches off.

Switching the MMI display on

- ▸ Press or turn the control knob, or
- ▸ Press the function button, a control button or the RETURN button.

Tips

– On vehicles with the cell phone prep*, if a call is made while the MMI display is switched off, the display will switch on automatically and remain on for the duration of the call.

– You can also change stations or find a selected audio/video source with the *arrow buttons* when the MMI display is switched off.

Adjusting the volume

Active audio/video source

You can adjust the volume or mute the audio/video sources using the On/Off knob.



Fig. 24 Adjusting the volume and muting the audio/video sources

Adjusting the volume

- ▸ Turn the On/Off knob to the right or left ⇨ *fig. 24*. The adjusted volume is stored.

Muting

- ▸ Press the On/Off knob briefly. A speaker symbol with a line through it appears in the MMI display. An active audio/video source is stopped.
- ▸ To cancel the muting, press or turn the On/Off knob briefly.

Volumes that are too high or too low are automatically set to a predetermined level when the MMI is switched on.

Tips

You can also adjust the volume using the right thumb wheel on the multifunction steering wheel without taking your hands off the ⇨ *page 75*.

Additional audio sources

The volume of the navigation announcements, voice recognition system and telephone can be adjusted individually.*



Fig. 25 Volume settings

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Volume settings**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The **Volume settings** menu appears in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a menu item such as **Voice recognition volume** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left or right to adjust the volume as desired.
- ▸ Press the control knob to confirm the setting.

The system automatically plays a test announcement while you are adjusting the volume.

Tips

– With the **In-car entertainment fader**, you can lower the volume of the active audio/video source during navigation announcements or when the Audi parking system* is active ⇨ *page 30*.
– On vehicles with a VDA-compatible phone upgrade, you will achieve the best sound quality if you adjust the input volume on the device to a medium level.

Adjusting the sound

Basic settings



Fig. 26 Selecting balance



Fig. 27 Adjusting balance

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu ⇨ *fig. 26*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a menu item such as **Balance** ⇨ *fig. 26* and press the knob. The selected menu item is shown enlarged in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 27*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the right or the left to adjust the sound characteristics.
- ▸ Press the control knob to confirm the setting.

The following sound adjustments are possible:

– Balance (right/left sound ratio)
– Fader (front/rear sound ratio)
– Treble
– Bass
– GALA (speed compensated volume)
– Subwoofer* (additional bass amplification)[1)]
– DSP* ⇨ *page 27* ▶

1) The subwoofer* cannot be adjusted on vehicles with the Bang & Olufsen* sound system.

– DSP Bang & Olufsen* ⇨ *page 27*
– Volume settings (for additional audio sources) ⇨ *page 26*

Treble and bass settings apply to the active mode. The balance and fader settings are independent of the mode.

Digital Signal Processing (DSP)

Applies to vehicles: with DSP

With Sound Focus, the sound can be optimized for the listener. GALA adjusts the volume and the sound characteristics to the vehicle speed.

Displaying the DSP menu

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **DSP** and press the knob. The **DSP** menu appears in the MMI display.

Sound Focus

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Sound Focus** and press the knob.
- ▸ To achieve a symmetrical sound distribution, turn the control knob to **All** and press the knob.
- ▸ To achieve a driver-oriented sound distribution, turn the control knob to **Driver** and press the knob.

GALA

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **GALA** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Active** or **Inactive**.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save your setting.

DSP Bang & Olufsen®

Applies to vehicles: with DSP Bang & Olufsen - Surround Sound

With Sound Focus, the sound can be optimized for the listener. Surround Level regulates the volume of the surround effect.

Displaying the DSP Bang & Olufsen menu

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **DSP Bang & Olufsen** and press the knob. The **DSP Bang & Olufsen** menu appears in the MMI display.

Sound Focus

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Sound Focus** and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the sound so it is the same for the entire vehicle interior, turn the control knob to **All** and press the knob.
- ▸ To achieve a driver-oriented sound distribution, turn the control knob to **Driver** and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the sound so it is oriented to the front or rear of the vehicle, turn the control knob to **Front**/**Rear** and press the knob.

Surround Level

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Surround level** and press the knob.
- ▸ To change the surround effect, turn the control knob to the right or left and press the knob.

GALA Plus

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **GALA Plus** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Active** or **Inactive**.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save your setting.

Setting the time

You can choose between the quartz clock and the radio clock. You enter the time and date yourself with the quartz clock. The radio clock* sets the time and date automatically.*

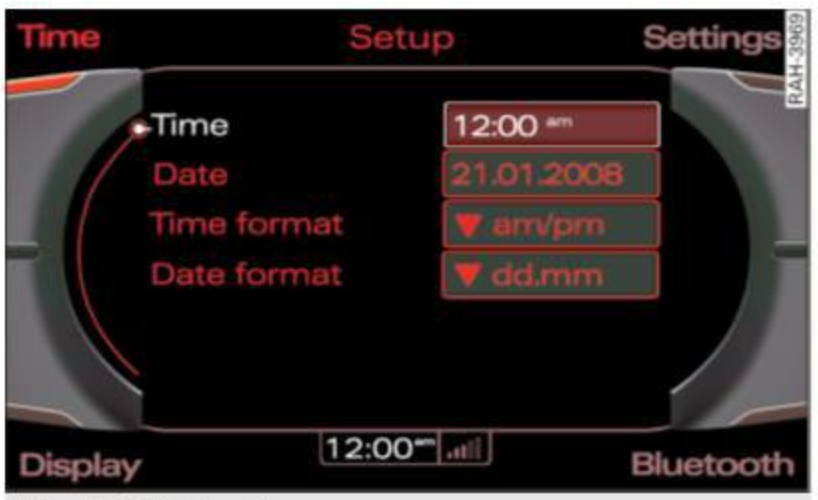


Fig. 28 Setting time

Opening the time setting menu

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Press the **Time** control button. The time setting menu appears in the MMI display.

Selecting the time source*

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Time source** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Quartz** or **Radio clock*** and press the knob. The **Radio clock*** source is indicated by the "radio clock reception signal" in the tachometer.

Setting the time with quartz time source

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Time** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*. The hour display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the hour, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob. The minute display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the minutes, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save the time you have set.

Setting the date with quartz time source

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Date** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*. The day display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the day, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob. The month display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the month, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob. The year display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the year, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to complete the date entry.

Setting the time format

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Time format** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **24h** or **am/pm**.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save your setting.

Setting the date format

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Date format** and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the date format "Day.Month", turn the control knob to **dd.mm** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*.
- ▸ To adjust the date format "Month/Day", turn the control knob to **mm/dd** and press the knob.

Tips

If the radio clock* does not receive a radio signal for three days, it automatically switches to the quartz clock.

Restarting the MMI (Reset)

MMI functionality is restored with a specific button combination.



Fig. 29 Button combination to restart the MMI

- ▸ Press and hold the SETUP function button ①, the control knob ② and the upper right control button ③ *at the same time*.
- ▸ Release the buttons. The MMI system switches off and then restarts.

Additional settings

MMI menu language

- ▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Menu language**.

The displays in the MMI display and driver information system and the language for the navigation announcements and voice recognition system can be changed. ▶

English, French and Spanish are available.

Measurement units

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Measurement units**.

The following measurement units can be set in the MMI display and driver information system.

– Distance (miles or kilometers)
– Speed (mph or km/h)
– Temperature (°F or °C)
– Pressure (psi or bar)
– Consumption (mpg (US), l/100 km, mpg (UK) or km/l)
– Volume (gallon (US), liter or gallon (UK))

Voice recognition system

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Voice recognition**.

Short dialogue

When **Short dialogue** is activated, a shorter form of the voice recognition announcements is used.

Input signal

You can switch the **Beep** input signal during a dialogue on or off.

Individual training

Individual training improves the recognition function of the voice recognition system by adapting it to your voice or pronunciation. Individual training is comprised of 40 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers.

For an overview of all voice commands, refer to ⇨ *page 82*.

Delete all name tags

All of the name tags you have stored (spoken names) are erased.

Tips

Individual training can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Default settings

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Default settings**.

You can reset the following functions to the default setting:

– Sound settings
– Radio
– Media settings
– Jukebox
– Directory
– Telephone*
– Bluetooth*
– Navigation settings
– Navigation memory
– Voice recognition

After selecting the functions, turn the control knob to **Reset systems**. Confirm your entry by turning the control knob to **Yes** and pressing it.

You can also reset all of the functions listed to the factory default settings by activating the **Select all** option.

If you reset the **Jukebox** to default settings, all of the music files are deleted and the **Media settings** are reset.

MMI display brightness

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Display** control button > **Brightness**.

You can adjusting the brightness of the display by turning the control knob to the right or left.

Version information

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Version information**. ▶

This function shows the MMI and navigation software version.

Data password

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Data password**.

You can protect your personal data such as directory entries, navigation destinations and name tags with a personal password. If the unit is replaced, you can only transfer your personal data to the new MMI unit using your password.

Tips

If you do not assign a personal password, “MMI3G” is stored in the MMI automatically as the password.

In-car entertainment fader

▸ Select: MEDIA function button > SETUP function button > **In-car entertainment fader**.

With the **In-car entertainment fader**, you can lower the volume of the active audio/video source during navigation announcements or when the Audi parking system* is active.

You can also adjust the **In-car entertainment fader** in the Radio, Navigation or Car modes.

Listening to the radio

Introduction



Fig. 30 FM station list



Fig. 31 Sirius channel list during loss of reception

The radio has three bands: FM, AM and Sirius* (satellite radio). With an HD Radio receiver, you also receive FM/AM radio stations in digital format. The receivable stations are shown on a radio station list and can be selected directly. You can select the next receivable station by pressing a button on the MMI unit or playing all stations for a few seconds using the SCAN function ⇨ *page 33*. You can also save your favorite stations in a preset list in any order.

The radio supports reception of broadcasts in non-delayed ballgame mode. During transmission in ballgame mode, the broadcast switches automatically to the analog reception signal.

FM band

The FM station list (maximum 75 stations) is updated automatically.

AM band

The AM station list (maximum 165 stations) must be updated manually.

The stations in the station list are still displayed after leaving the reception area. Reception is lost.

HD Radio™ technology (digital radio)[1)]

The HD Radio receiver operates as a hybrid system simultaneously with the analog FM/AM bands. When the FM/AM station is available in digital format, the HD symbol (1) ⇨ *fig. 30* appears in the FM/AM station list. If the digital signal is lost, the radio switches automatically to the analog FM/AM station.

Sirius (satellite radio)*

The Sirius provider automatically updates the Sirius* channel list (maximum 224 channels). If the last channel playing is no longer available after a channel list update, channel 184 will play automatically.

If the radio signal is lost, radio stations that are not currently received are displayed in the station list with the following system information:

- **ANTENNA** - No antenna is connected to the tuner
- **LINKING** - The tuner is presently not receiving any satellite signal (1) ⇨ *fig. 31*

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

- To receive satellite programs, you must contact the Sirius* service provider ⇨ *page 32*.

1) HD Radio™ Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

– HD Radio™ is not available in Canada.

Starting radio mode

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

▸ Press the RADIO function button. The list of stations/channels or the last active radio menu appears in the MMI display.

The menu that was open the last time you listened to the radio is shown in the MMI display. Press the RADIO function button again while in radio mode to open the station/channel list.

Activating your Satellite Radio service

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service

In order to be able to receive satellite programs and traffic message channel (TMC), this service must be enabled.

In order to have the service enabled at your provider, you need the electronic serial number (ESN) of the tuner. To show the electronic serial number in the display:

Sirius station list

▸ Press the **Band** control button.
▸ Turn the control knob to **Sirius** and press the knob. The channel list is displayed.
▸ Turn the knob to **000 Sirius ID** and press the knob.

Setup menu

▸ Press the SETUP function button in the Satellite Radio menu.
▸ Select **Receiver serial number** by turning the control knob and press the control knob.

Tips

– Objects such as buildings, tunnels, bridges, terrain, other vehicles or objects on the roof of the vehicle can result in decreased performance.
– Satellite Radio reception is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. Please contact Sirius Canada for details.

Selecting frequency band

The MMI has three bands: FM, AM and satellite radio (Sirius).*

Requirement: The radio is on ⇨ *page 32*.

Band control button

▸ Press the **Band** control button.
▸ Turn the control knob to the desired frequency band.
▸ Press the control knob to select the frequency band. The current frequency band is indicated in the title line of the MMI display.

RADIO function button

▸ To select the frequency band, press the RADIO function button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is shown in the title line of the MMI display.

Tips

You can select the frequency band with the multifunction steering wheel just as easily ⇨ *page 76*.

Selecting a station from the station/ preset list

The receivable stations for the selected frequency band are displayed in the station lists.



Fig. 32 Additional HD Radio channels

From the station list

- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired radio station/channel.
- ▸ Press the control knob to select the station/ channel.

From the preset list

- ▸ Press the **Presets** control button. The preset list is displayed.
- ▸ To select a station/channel from the preset list, turn the control knob to the station/ channel.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The station/channel is selected.

To update the station list in the AM band, turn the control knob to **Update station list** and press the knob. The station lists in the FM and Sirius* bands are updated automatically.

Digital FM HD Radio channels may have several additional channels*. The available additional channels* are listed under the radio station. When leaving the reception area, additional channels* that are not received are identified with the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 32*.

Tips

You can also perform this function with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 76*.

Selecting the station



Fig. 33 Selecting the station (Sirius band)

Requirement: The desired frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

Automatic seek

- ▸ Press the **Tuning** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **>| (Seek/Skip up)** or **|< (Seek/Skip down)**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The next receivable station/channel is selected.

Manual search

- ▸ Press the **Tuning** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **TUNE/CH** (Channel number) and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the frequency in small stages or selecting the next/previous channel in station list, turn the control knob to the right or left.

Scanning stations

- ▸ Press the **Tuning** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **SCAN** (Scan) and press the knob.
- ▸ Press the control knob again to stop the scan function. The current station is selected.

Tips

– You can also press the *arrow buttons* on the MMI control panel briefly to switch to the previous/next station in the station list ⇨ *page 22*.

– If the scan function is activated in the AM band, the AM band station list will also be updated during the scan process. ▶

– An FM station with poor reception will no longer be displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station. However, you can save the station and select it again from the station list ⇨ *page 34*.

Storing stations

The preset list can contain up to 50 stations from all frequency bands.

Requirement: A station/channel list must be displayed ⇨ *page 33, fig. 32*.

Using the control knob

- ▸ Press and hold the control knob until the station/channel is stored in the next available position in the preset list and **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To change the position in the preset list, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to store the station/channel in the selected position.

Using the Presets control button

- ▸ Press the **Presets** control button. **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The selected station/channel is stored in the next available position in the preset list and **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To change the position in the preset list, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to store the station/channel in the selected position.

Tips

You can delete an individual station or all stations from the preset list ⇨ *page 36*.

Moving stored stations

Requirement: A station must be stored in the preset list ⇨ *page 34*.

- ▸ Press the **Presets** control button. The preset list is displayed.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a station/channel and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Move** *Station name* and press the knob. The station/channel is stored in the next available position in the preset list and **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To change the position in the preset list, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to store the station/channel in the selected position.

Additional settings

HD Radio™ reception

Requirement: The FM/AM band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

- ▸ Select: RADIO function button > **Settings** control button > **HD Radio**.

You can turn the HD Radio reception **On** and **Off** manually.

HD Radio™ station info

Requirement: The FM/AM band must be selected ⇨ *page 32* and the HD Radio reception must be turned on ⇨ *page 34*.

- ▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **HD station info**.

If information such as the artist or album is available for the current track, it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Station names

Requirement: The FM frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

- ▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Station names**.

Scrolling station names

Scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the MMI display. ▶

Fixed station names

Scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the MMI display. Only the current section of the scrolling text is displayed.

Station names Off

Text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the MMI display. Scrolling text transmitted by the HD stations is shown in the MMI display.

Displaying radio text

Requirement: The FM frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > **Tuning** control button > **TEXT** (Radio text).

Radio texts are additional information transmitted by some stations (e.g. station name, artist or track).

Song information

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: Satellite Radio must be activated ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > **Tuning** control button > **INFO (Station info)**.

Some radio stations transmit additional information about the program. For example, information about the artist or album could be displayed.

Station info

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: Satellite Radio must be activated ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Station info** > **On** or **Off**.

If information is available for the current track (such as artist or album), it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Station sorting

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: The Sirius frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Station sorting**.

Channel number

The channels are listed by channel number in ascending order.

Channel name

The channel categories are listed in the main menu in alphabetical order.

Category and channel no.

The channels are listed by category and than by channel number.

Category and chan. name

The channels are listed by category and than by channel name.

Tips

The channels that are displayed in the channel list can be filtered according to your personal desires as to type of program.

Category filter

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: Satellite Radio must be activated ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Category filter**.

The channels that are displayed in the channel list can be filtered according to your personal desires as to type of program. The selection of program categories depends on what your provider offers.

If you select the option **Deactivate filter**, all filter options are deactivated and all available channels are displayed in the satellite channel list.

Deleting memory entries

Requirement: A frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32* and a station must be stored in the preset list ⇨ *page 34*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Delete presets**.

Delete individually

Select **Delete individually** by turning and pressing the control knob. Then select the station/channel to be deleted and press the control knob.

Delete all entries

Select **Delete all entries** by turning and pressing the control knob. All stored stations/channels are deleted from the preset list.

Playing media

Introduction

You can start and operate the CD/DVD drive, CD changer*, Jukebox, memory card reader and a portable audio device* (such as an iPod or USB storage device) using the MMI control panel. Different functions are available depending on the active source and the medium inserted. For example, you can select individual tracks or folders directly, play the tracks in random order or display information stored in an ID3/WMA/AAC tag with the current track (such as the artist, album, title, year and genre).

Starting Media mode



Fig. 34 Audio/video source overview

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- Press the MEDIA function button. The source overview ⇨ *fig. 34* or the track that was playing the last time media mode was active will be shown in the MMI display.
- If the source overview is not shown in the MMI display, press the **Source** control button.

Selecting source



Fig. 35 List of possible audio/video sources

Requirement: A source must contain an audio or video file.

- Press the MEDIA function button.
- Press the **Source** control button.
- Turn the control knob to a source and press the knob. The track list or folder structure for the selected source is shown in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to a track or a folder and press the knob.

Possible sources are:

① Jukebox
② Memory card
③ CD/DVD drive
④ Audi music interface* (such as an iPod) or external audio input
⑤ CD changer*

Selecting a folder

The folders for the active audio source are shown in the MMI display.



Fig. 36 Folder structure for an MP3 CD.

Requirement: The selected source must contain audio files.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA function button. The folder structure for the selected source is displayed ⇨ *fig. 36*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a folder.
- ▸ Press the control knob to select the folder. The tracks in the folder are displayed.

Tips

– To reach the next highest level, press the RETURN button or turn the control knob to the **Up** folder and press the knob.
– To reach the highest level in the folder structure, press the MEDIA function button.
– You can scroll through long lists of folders quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of folders.

Selecting a track

The track with the play time is shown in the MMI display.



Fig. 37 Track list

Requirement: An audio CD or a folder must be selected ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to a track ⇨ *fig. 37*.
- ▸ Press the control knob to select the track. The track will play.

If metadata (such as an ID3 tag) is available for a current track (such as the artist, album or track), it will be displayed in a pop-up window. The **Display track info** function must be activated ⇨ *page 42*.

Tips

– You can also perform this function with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 77*.
– You can scroll through long lists of tracks quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of tracks.

Fast forward/rewind

You can skip forward or back within a tracking using fast forward/rewind.



Fig. 38 Fast forward in a CD

Requirement: An audio file or a video DVD must be playing.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to ▷▷ (Forward) ⇨ *fig. 38* or ◁◁ (Rewind) and hold the knob down.

Tips

You can also press and hold the *arrow buttons* on the MMI control panel to fast forward or rewind within a track or video DVD ⇨ *page 22*.

Next/previous track or chapter

This function makes it possible to skip to the previous or next track or chapter within an audio/video source.



Fig. 39 Next chapter

Requirement: An audio file or a video DVD must be playing.

Previous/next track

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to ▷| (Next track) or |◁ (Previous track).
- ▸ Press the control knob to skip to the previous/next track. The track will play.

Next/previous chapter (video DVD)

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to ▷| (Next chapter) or |◁ (Previous chapter).
- ▸ Press the control knob to skip to the previous/next chapter.

If you select **Previous track**/**Previous chapter** within 10 seconds after a track has started to play, the previous track will start playing. If you press it after 10 seconds, the current track will begin playing again from the beginning.

Tips

You can also press the *arrow buttons* on the MMI control panel briefly to switch to the previous/next track or chapter ⇨ *page 22*.

Track information



Fig. 40 Track information

Requirement: And audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 38*.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **INFO** (Title information) ⇨ *fig. 40* and press the knob.

If metadata (such as an ID3 tag) is available for a current track (such as the artist, album or track), it will be displayed in a pop-up window.

Repeat options



Fig. 41 Repeat

Requirement: And audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 38*.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **RPT** (Repeat options) ⇨ *fig. 41* and press the knob.

The following functions can be selected for repeat:

– **Off** - the **Repeat options** are switched off.
– **Medium** - if a CD is playing in the CD changer*, the tracks on the CD will repeat. ▸

– **Folder** - the tracks in the folder will repeat.
– **Track** - the current track playing will repeat.

Tips

Shuffle also depends on the settings for the repeat options.

Shuffle

You can play the tracks in random order.



Fig. 42 Shuffle

Requirement: An audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 38* and **Repeat options** must be selected.

- Press the **Manual** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **Shuffle** ⇨ *fig. 42* and press the knob.

– **Off** repeat option - all of the files in the active audio source play in random order.
– **Medium** repeat option - if a CD is playing in the CD changer*, the tracks on the CD play in random order.
– **Folder** repeat option - the tracks in the current track list with audio files play in random order.

DVD main menu



Fig. 43 DVD main menu

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- Press the **Manual** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **MENU** (Display main menu) ⇨ *fig. 43* and press the knob. The DVD main menu is shown in the MMI display.
- To select a menu item, turn the control knob to the item and press the knob.

Tips

You can also control the DVD main menu with the joystick ⇨ *page 24*.

DVD full screen display

The video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons. You can still hear the sound.



Fig. 44 DVD full screen

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37* and the vehicle must be stopped.

- Press the **Manual** control button.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to ⟲ (Display full screen) ⇨ *fig. 44* and press the knob. The video image expands to fill the entire MMI display.
- ▸ To deactivate the full screen display, turn the control knob back to ⟲ (Display full screen) and press the knob.

DVD parental control

You can restrict the playback of video DVDs with the parental control. The settings are protected by a password.



Fig. 45 Selecting the content rating

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

Selecting the content rating

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Parental control** and press the knob.
- ▸ Enter the password using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Content rating** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a level (such as **Level 5**) and press the knob. The selected level is stored.

Change password

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Parental control** and press the knob.
- ▸ Enter the password using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Change password** and press the knob.
- ▸ Enter the new parental control password using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob.
- ▸ Enter the new parental control password again.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry. The new password is stored.

In accordance with the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA), the following eight levels can be selected for **Parental control**:

Parental Level	Description
Level 1 - G	Unrestricted audience
Level 2	Most audiences
Level 3 - PG	Mature young audience
Level 4 - PG-13	Teenage audience
Level 5	Mature teenage audience
Level 6 - R	Mature audience
Level 7 - NC-17	Adult audience
Level 8 - Adult	Most restricted audience

If you select **Level 5**, for example, for the parental control level, all DVDs from level 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play.

The **Off** setting deactivates all restrictions.

Tips

- The password “1234” is set for the **Parental control** at the factory.
- Password entry will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row.
- Only your authorized Audi dealer can reset the parental control password.

Pausing/continuing playback



Fig. 46 Pausing/continuing playback

Requirement: An audio file or a video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 38*.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to || (pause) ⇨ *fig. 46* and press the knob. Playback is paused and the mute symbol (13) ⇨ *page 22, fig. 19* appears in the status line of the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to || (pause) again and press the knob.

Tips

- – You can also pause and continue playback in the active audio source with the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 75*.
- – You can also perform this function with the multifunction steering wheel without removing your hands from the wheel ⇨ *page 77*.

Additional settings

Track display

Requirement: A folder with audio files must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Track display**

File name

The name of the file is displayed without the file extension.

Track name

The track name, for example from the ID3 tag, is displayed.

Tips

The **Track display** function is not available for the Jukebox or a connected iPod.

Displaying track information

Requirement: A folder with audio files must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Select: MEDIA function button > SETUP function button > **Display track info**.

If information is available for the current track (such as artist or album), it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Aspect ratio

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Select: MEDIA function button > SETUP function button > **Aspect ratio**.

The following functions can be selected for the aspect ratio:

- – **Automatic adjustment** - the aspect ratio is adjusted automatically. The image width varies depending on film format.
- – **Standard (4:3)** - the DVD image is displayed in **4:3** format.
- – **Widescreen (16:9)** - the DVD image is displayed in **16:9** format.
- – **Zoom** - the DVD image is expanded to fill the complete display.
- – **Cinemascope** - the image is displayed in the **1:2.35** aspect ratio.

Input level

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface or Aux-in connection

Requirement: A portable audio device must be connected with the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable* ⇨ *page 16*. ▶

- Select: MEDIA function button > Source External audio input/Audi music interface > SETUP function button > **Input level**.

The volume of the portable audio device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume of the portable audio device to 70 percent of the maximum output.

Directory

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The MMI contains an extensive directory. You can manage up to 5,000 entries with the directory ⇨ *page 52*. You can transfer up to 2,000 directory entries from your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The imported directory entries are stored in the general profile or in your personal profile in the MMI ⇨ *page 50*. You can also manually store up to 100 entries per profile in the MMI local memory.

You can store up to five telephone numbers (land line, cell and fax) for each entry. You can store a private and work navigation destination in the local MMI memory for up to 100 entries. You can then use these entries directly from the directory for communication and navigation.

Opening the directory

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 47 List of entries

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- Press the NAME function button. A list of entries ⇨ *fig. 47* or the last active directory menu appears in the MMI display.
- If a list of entries ⇨ *fig. 47* does not appear in the MMI display, press the NAME function button again.

The directory entries are displayed in alphabetical order and identified with a symbol ⇨ *fig. 47*.

① Local MMI memory
② SIM card
③ Cell phone

Storing a new directory entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You must enter a name for the new entry first. Then you can enter additional optional information such as telephone numbers, address or navigation destination.



Fig. 48 Storing a new entry

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*.

- Turn the control knob to **New entry** ⇨ *fig. 48* and press the knob. An input field appears in the MMI display.
- Press the control knob to open the **Name** field. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- Enter the name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry. The input field appears again in the MMI display.
- To enter additional data, select a field with the control knob and follow the instructions above.

You can store up to five telephone numbers in an address card. You can also assign a **Type** (**Business** or **Private**) and a **Category** (**Land line**, **Cell** or **Fax**) to a telephone number. You can also identify a frequently used telephone number as a **Preferred phone number**. That number is then displayed first in the open address card. ▶

Tips

– Entries are stored automatically during input.
– The new entry is stored in the local memory for the current profile. The local memory for the current profile is limited to 100 entries.

Importing directory entries

Importing a phone book

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Directory entries from a cell phone can be imported into the directory manually.



Fig. 49 Importing a phone book

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and the cell phone prep ⇨ *page 18* must be active.

- Press the **Memory** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **Import phone book** ⇨ *fig. 49* and press the knob. The phone book in the connected cell phone is imported.

If you have not created a personal profile ⇨ *page 50*, the phone book will be imported into the general profile. When connecting a cell phone, the existing entries are overwritten with the entries in the cell phone that is currently connected. Up to 2,000 entries can be imported into the general profile.

Tips

The directory entries in the current profile are updated automatically when a cell phone is connected.

Importing a phone number

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can import a phone number for an existing entry in the directory.



Fig. 50 Entering the phone number using the speller



Fig. 51 Transferring the number from the call lists

Requirement: A new entry must stored in the directory ⇨ *page 44* or an existing entry in the local MMI memory will be edited ⇨ *page 48*.

- Turn the control knob to **Phone numbers** and press the knob.
- Turn the control knob to **New phone number** and press the knob. An input field appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to **Number** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display.
- Select **List** ⇨ *fig. 50* in the speller and press the control knob. The **Import from** menu appears in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 51*. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to a call list (for example **Dialed numbers** ⇨ *fig. 51*) from which the phone number will be imported and press the knob. A list of phone numbers appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a phone number and press the knob. The phone number is imported into the address card and stored automatically.

You can also enter a phone number directly in the **Number** field using the speller without using the import function.

If the functions are grayed out, make sure your cell phone is paired with the cell phone prep. Also make sure there are phone numbers in the call lists on your cell phone.

Tips

The import function depends on the cell phone. Grayed out functions cannot be selected.

Importing address cards

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Address cards in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory with a memory card or a USB storage device.*

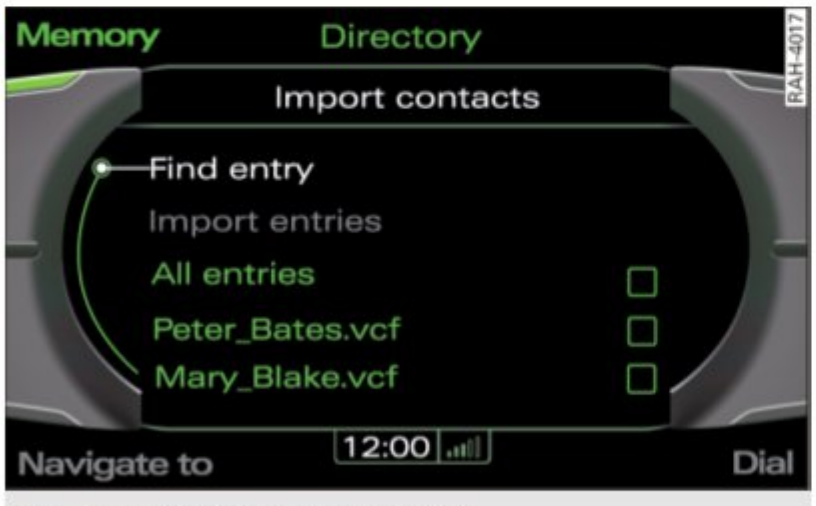


Fig. 52 Importing address cards

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and a memory card must be inserted in the memory card reader ⇨ *page 13* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* using a USB adapter cable* ⇨ *page 16*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Import contacts** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **SD card 1**, **SD card 2** or **USB storage device** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **All entries** or a certain entry in the list ⇨ *fig. 52* and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Import entries** and press the knob to import the selected entry or all entries.
- ▸ To search for an entry in the cell phone directory, turn the control knob to **Find entry**. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry.

Tips

– The address import depends on the cell phone. Only structured addresses that have information regarding country, city, ZIP code and street can be imported.
– You can check the directory memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 52*.
– The imported address cards are stored in the local memory for the current profile.

Exporting address cards

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Directory entries can be exported to a memory card or USB storage device in vCard format (.vcf).

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Export contacts** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry in the list or **All entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ To search for an entry, turn the control knob to **Find entry** ⇨ *page 46, fig. 52*. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry. The entry is selected. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Export entries individually** or **Export packed entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the source **SD card 1**, **SD card 2** or **USB storage device** and press the knob.

You can export packed directory entries or individual entries.

– **Export entries individually** - a vCard file (.vcf) is created for each directory entry during the export.
– **Export packed entries** - only one vCard file (.vcf) is created for all directory entries during export.

Using a directory entry

Searching

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can select an entry directly from a list or search for it using the speller.



Fig. 53 Searching for an entry

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and entries must be displayed ⇨ *page 44*.

Selecting an entry from a list

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry ⇨ *page 44, fig. 48* and press the knob. The address card is shown in the MMI display.

Searching for an entry using the speller

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** ⇨ *fig. 53* and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter a name using the speller, or
- ▸ Select a name in the speller from **LIST**.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry.

Tips

– You can change, delete ⇨ *page 49*, call up or navigate to ⇨ *page 48* an existing entry.
– You can also search for an entry easily using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 86*.

Selecting

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can make calls to entries with phone numbers.



Fig. 54 Calling up an entry

Requirement: The directory must be open and list of directory entries must be displayed ⇨ *page 44*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The address card appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a phone number ⇨ *fig. 54* and press the **Dial** control button. The call is made, or
- ▸ Press the control knob. The telephone menu appears in the MMI display with the speller and the selected phone number.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob. The connection is established.

Tips

You can also make calls easily using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 86*.

Navigating

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can navigate directly to entries in the directory that have navigation destinations.



Fig. 55 Selecting a navigation destination

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and must contain stored entries with private or business navigation destinations ⇨ *fig. 55*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob.
- ▸ If an entry contains two navigation destinations (private and business), turn and press the control knob to select a navigation destination.
- ▸ Press the **Navigate to** control button, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Navigate to** ⇨ *fig. 55* and press the knob. The navigation menu appears in the MMI display with the selected navigation destination.

Editing a directory entry

Storing a navigation destination

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can store a business and a personal navigation destination for an existing entry in the directory.



Fig. 56 Navigation destination input field



Fig. 57 Setting a navigation destination from the last destinations

Requirement: An address card must be open for editing ⇨ *fig. 56* and a private/business navigation destination must be selected or a new entry must be created ⇨ *page 44*.

Entering a navigation destination

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field is shown in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Country** and press the knob. A list of countries appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a country and press the knob. The land is entered in the input field.
- ▸ To enter additional data, select a field with the control knob and follow the instructions ▶

above. Your entries are automatically stored in the address card.

Selecting from an address

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The stored address is automatically set as the navigation destination.

Selecting from last destinations

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field is shown in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- Turn the control knob to **Last destinations** ⇨ *fig. 57* and press the knob. A list of the last destinations appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to a navigation destination and press the knob. The navigation destination is stored in the address card.

Setting based on the current position

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field appears ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- Turn the control knob to **Current position** ⇨ *fig. 57* and press the knob. The data for the current position is set as the navigation destination.

Selecting from points of interest

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field is shown in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- Turn the control knob to **Point of interest** ⇨ *fig. 56* and press the knob.
- Turn the control knob to **Top categories** for example and press the knob.

A private and a business navigation destination can be assigned to each directory entry. You can call up the stored navigation destinations in the Navigation menu using the **Memory** control button (**Load from directory**) ⇨ *page 68*.

You can find the next rest stop, gas station, Audi dealer or hospital under the **Top destinations** menu item. The **Point of interest** ⇨ *fig. 56* menu item contains additional submenus that you can use to create navigation destinations. For more information about the submenus, refer to ⇨ *page 63*.

Tips

- You can also display a navigation destination as a **Favorite**. The navigation destination is then displayed in the destination entry menu under the Navigation menu ⇨ *page 69*.
- Entries that have an assigned navigation destination are stored in the local memory for the current profile. The current profile is limited to 100 entries.

Changing an entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can edit the entries in the MMI local memory at any time.



Fig. 58 Editing an entry

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *fig. 58*.

- Turn the control knob to **Edit entry** ⇨ *fig. 58* and press the knob. An input field appears in the MMI display.
- Select a field with the control knob and press the knob to edit the entry data.

You cannot edit directory entries from the cell phone memory directly in the MMI. To edit an entry from the cell phone, turn the control knob to **Copy for editing** and press the knob. A copy of the entry is stored in the MMI memory.

The MMI cannot automatically update changed directory entries in the connected ▶

cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone entries directly in the cell phone.

Deleting an entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can delete the entries in the MMI local memory at any time.

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *page 49, fig. 58*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete entry** ⇨ *page 49, fig. 58* and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to delete an entry. The entry is deleted from the MMI local memory.

Reading a name

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The MMI automatically creates a name tag for each entry in the directory. You can also assign up to 50 personal name tags for address cards using the voice recognition system.

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*.

Reading in an address card

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The address card is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Read name** and press the knob. The name is read.

Reading in the SETUP menu

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Read voice memos** and press the knob. A list with personal name tags appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The name tags are played.

Tips

– You can only assign and store personal name tags using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 87*.

– You can also read all the names easily using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 87*.

Deleting a name tag

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*.

Deleting in the address card

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The address card is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete name tag** and press the knob. The name tag is deleted.

Deleting in the SETUP menu

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete voice memos** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete individually** or **Delete all entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to begin the deletion process.

Tips

– You can only delete personal assigned name tags.

– There is another way to delete all name tags. For more information, refer to ⇨ *page 29*.

Managing profiles

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

A general profile and up to four personal profiles are available in the directory.

A personal profile is useful if you will be connecting different cell phones to the MMI. In the personal profile, you have immediate access to the cell phone directory entries when you connect the phone. The directory entries are updated automatically in the background. ▸

The entries for the connected cell phone are loaded into the general profile. When that happens, the entries from the last cell phone that was connected to the general profile are overwritten.

Creating a profile

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 59 Creating a profile

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*, the cell phone prep ⇨ *page 18* must be activated and the automatic import of cell phone directory entries must be complete.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Create profile** ⇨ *fig. 59* and press the knob. The profile name is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to store the profile.

The Bluetooth name of the connected cell phone is automatically set as the profile name. However, you can assign your own profile names ⇨ *page 52*.

Tips

The **Create profile** menu item is only available when a cell phone is connected. In addition, there must not be a profile already stored for the connected cell phone.

Deleting profiles

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 60 Deleting other profiles

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and a profile must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 51*.

Deleting the current profile

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete current profile** ⇨ *page 51, fig. 59* and press the knob. All directory entries for the current profile are deleted.

Deleting other profiles

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete other profiles** ⇨ *fig. 60* and press the knob. A list with all of the stored profiles and the directory for the general profile appears in the MMI display. The current profile is not displayed in the list.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a stored profile or **Directory** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Confirm your entry by turning the control knob to **Yes** and pressing it. The speller appears in the MMI display to enter the **ID number**.
- ▸ Enter the last seven characters of your vehicle's **VIN** with the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry. ▶

You can find the **Vehicle ID number (VIN)** in the CAR menu or the vehicle registration. To obtain the **Vehicle ID number (VIN)**, press the CAR function button. Turn the control knob to **Vehicle ID number (CAR)** and press the knob.

Changing profile names

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and a profile must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 51*.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Change profile names** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display with the profile name in the input field.
- ▸ Turn the speller to ⬅ and press the control knob until the profile name in the input field is deleted.
- ▸ Enter a new profile name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry.

Additional settings

Memory capacity

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

- ▸ Select: NAME function button > **Memory** control button > **Memory capacity**.

The **Memory capacity** for the current profile and the entire memory is displayed.

You can manage up to 5,000 entries with the directory. You can import up to 2,000 entries into the general profile or your personal profile. You can also manually store up to 100 entries per profile in the MMI local memory.

Calling

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can use a cell phone comfortably with the MMI. Many functions you are familiar with from your cell phone are available: you can answer and end calls or place them on hold. You can also access the MMI directory and the cell phone directory.

The active audio source is muted during an incoming/outgoing call and the drive is paused ⇨ *page 25*. After the call has ended, the audio source is restored to the previous volume level.

If you do not want to hear navigation announcements during a phone call, you can switch off that option ⇨ *page 72*.

Note

– Switch the phone system off through the Telephone Setup menu in areas where cell phone usage is prohibited. Obey all applicable instructions and regulations.
– Switch your cell phone off in areas at risk for an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. They may include gas stations, equipment that stores or transports fuel or chemicals, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour or sawdust) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally switch your vehicle off.

Tips

The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Starting Telephone mode

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 61 Speller for entering a phone number

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

▸ Press the TEL function button. The speller ⇨ *fig. 61* or the last active Telephone menu appears in the MMI display.

You open the speller by pressing the TEL function button in telephone mode.

Dialing a telephone number

Directly through the speller

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The speller can be used to enter a phone number directly as a series of numbers or letters.



Fig. 62 Entering telephone numbers using the number speller



Fig. 63 Entering telephone numbers using the letter speller

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18* and the speller must appear in the display ⇨ *fig. 62*.

Entering the phone number as a sequence of numbers

- ▸ Enter the phone number using the speller.
- ▸ Confirm your entry by selecting **OK** in the speller and pressing, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button. As the number is being dialed, the audio source is muted.

Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters

- ▸ Enter an area code with the speller.
- ▸ To change to the letter speller, turn the speller to **A-Z** (1) ⇨ *fig. 62* and press the control knob.
- ▸ Use the speller to enter a series of letters such as *AUDISERVICE* ⇨ *fig. 63*.
- ▸ Confirm your entry by selecting **OK** in the speller and pressing, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button. The entered telephone number is dialed.

If you enter a phone number incorrectly, you can press on the RETURN button to completely delete the number you entered in the speller.

Tips

– DTMF tones can be entered directly through the speller or loaded from the stored phone numbers ⇨ *page 54*.
– The audio source is muted during an incoming/outgoing call.
– If you switch **Off** voice guidance while in navigation mode, navigation commands will not play during a call ⇨ *page 72*.
– If you have switched the MMI display off, it will switch on automatically and remain on for the duration of the call.

From a list

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 64 Dialing a phone number from a list

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18*.

Searching and calling telephone numbers in a list

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Directory**, **Dialed numbers**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The phone numbers from the selected list appear in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired telephone number.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The selected telephone number is copied to the speller.
- ▸ To initiate the call, turn the speller to **OK** and press the control knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button.

Dialed number list quick display and calling a number

- ▸ Press the TEL function button. The speller is shown in the MMI display. There is *no* telephone number in the entry field of the speller.
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button. The **Dialed numbers** list appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired telephone number.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The selected telephone number is copied to the speller.
- ▸ To initiate the call, turn the speller to **OK** and press the control knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button.

Tips

The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Answering/ignoring a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 65 Answering an incoming call

Requirement: An incoming call.

Answering a call

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Answer** and press the knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Answer** control button.

Ignoring a call

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Ignore** and press the knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Ignore** control button.

The *Name*, *Phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the display depending on whether the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

Tips

- – You can accept an incoming call during an active call. The active call is placed on hold automatically.
- – The audio source is muted during an incoming/outgoing call.
- – If you would not like to hear navigation announcements during a phone call, you can switch them off ⇨ *page 72*.
- – A call can also be answered/ignored using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 79*.

Ending a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: You have an active call or are dialing a call.

- To end a phone call or to cancel dialing, press the **End call** control button ⇨ *page 56, fig. 66*.

Tips

A call can also be ended using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 79*.

Storing a phone number in the directory

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

A new phone number or a number from the call lists can be stored in the directory.



Fig. 66 Storing the phone number in the directory

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18*.

New phone number

- Enter a new phone number in the speller ⇨ *page 54*.
- Press the **Memory** control button ⇨ *fig. 66*.
- Turn the control knob to **Store current number** and press the knob.
- To create a new entry, turn the control knob to **New entry** ⇨ *page 44, fig. 48* and press the control knob ⇨ *page 44*, or
- To add a phone number to an existing entry, turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob ⇨ *page 47*, or
- Turn the control knob to an entry in the list and press the knob. The address card opens.
- Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob. The phone number is stored.

Phone number from a call list

- Press the **Memory** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **Dialed numbers**, **Received calls** or **Missed calls**.
- Press the control knob. The available phone numbers are listed in the display.
- Turn the control knob to the phone number that will be stored and press the knob.
- Turn the control knob to **Store** and press the knob.
- To create a new entry, turn the control knob to **New entry** ⇨ *page 44, fig. 48* and press the control knob ⇨ *page 44*, or
- To add a phone number to an existing entry, turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob ⇨ *page 47*, or
- Turn the control knob to an entry in the list and press the knob. The address card opens.
- Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob. The phone number is stored.

Tips

You can edit the directory ⇨ *page 44*.

Dialing stored phone numbers

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can dial a phone number from the call lists or from the MMI directory.



Fig. 67 Searching stored telephone numbers

Requirement: Telephone mode must be started ⇨ *page 18* and a phone number must be stored.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Directory**, for example.
- ▸ Press the control knob. **Find entry** and a list of stored entries appear in the MMI at the same time ⇨ *fig. 67*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** ⇨ *fig. 67* and press the knob. The speller appears in the display so you can enter names, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a name from the list and press the control knob. The phone number is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To dial the phone number, press the control knob and then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button.

Deleting local call lists

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18*.

Delete individually

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete local call lists** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Dialed numbers**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to delete a call list.

Delete all entries

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete local call lists** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete all entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to delete all the call lists.

Bluetooth settings

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 68 Bluetooth symbol

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Press the **Bluetooth** control button. The Bluetooth settings menu is shown in the MMI display.

Switching Bluetooth on/off

The MMI Bluetooth function can be switched **On** or **Off**. The Bluetooth symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 68* appears in the MMI display when the function is switched on.

Discovery mode

The visibility of the cell phone prep or cell phone can be switched **On** or **Off**. When auto is selected, the cell phone prep is visible to cell phones for approximately five minutes when the vehicle is stopped and the ignition key is inserted. The visibility switches off after that. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with cell phones that have already been paired when the visibility is switched off. The function should be switched off when the pairing process is complete so the cell phone prep is not visible to others.

Find Bluetooth devices

The system searches for lists of Bluetooth devices that are within range.

Paired devices

Bluetooth devices that have been paired with the MMI are listed. The active connected Bluetooth device is identified with the Bluetooth symbol. ▸

To delete paired Bluetooth devices individually, select the device and delete it with the **Delete device** function.

Bluetooth name

The name of the cell phone prep (such as "AUDI MMI 2613") is displayed and can be changed.

Delete Bluetooth devices

All paired cell phones can be deleted by confirming with **Yes**.

Additional settings

Options during a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: There must be an active phone call ⇨ *page 54*.

▸ Select: **Options** control button.

Switching the microphone off and on

When the microphone is **Mute** the connected party cannot hear anything from your phone. However, you can hear your connected party. **Mute off** appears in the MMI display.

Accepting another call

If another call comes in during an active call, the **Answer** and **Ignore** functions appear in the MMI display.

If you select **Answer**, the active call is put on hold and the incoming call is active. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored.

Replacing a call

If a call comes in while you have an active call and another call on hold, the **Replace** and **Ignore** functions appear in the MMI display.

If you select **Replace**, the active call will be replaced with the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored. A call on hold remains in queue.

The display in the MMI may still be visible for a few seconds depending on the cell phone in use. If you use the **Replace** or **Ignore** functions in the MMI while the display is still visible, the current telephone call will be ended.

Tips

The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone to be alerted to an incoming call during an active call. The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider.

Telephone settings

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

▸ Select: TEL function button > SETUP function button > **Telephone settings**.

Ring tone volume

You can increase (**Vol. -**) or decrease (**Vol. +**) the ring tone volume.

Call volume

The call volume can be adjusted.

Call options

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

▸ Select: TEL function button > SETUP function button > **Call options**.

3-way calling (GSM)

– **On** - When a call is in progress, you can accept an incoming call using the **Answer** option. The active call is put on hold. You can also put an active call on hold using the **Hold** option and start another call or a conference call.
– **Off** - You can replace a call in progress with an incoming call using the **Replace** option. You can ignore an incoming call using the **Ignore** option. You *cannot* put an active call on hold or start another call.

Auto redial

– **On** - a phone number will be redialed automatically up to five times if it is busy. Automatic redial can be cancelled with the **End call** function.
– **Off** - a phone number is *not* redialed if it is busy.

▶

Auto answer

– **On** - An incoming call is answered automatically. This can be ignored with the **Ignore** function if the call was not answered automatically.
– **Off** - An incoming call is *not* answered automatically.

Invert call lists

The telephone numbers in the call lists are sorted according to the time they called. Switching this function on will sort them in the opposite order.

Voicemail number

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

▸ Select: TEL function button > SETUP function button > **Voicemail number**.

Enter the voicemail number with the speller or from a **List** (directory) and store with **OK**.

When a voicemail number is stored, the voicemail can be accessed with the ⌾ symbol in the speller.

This service must be set up and activated in advance in the cell phone network. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Tips

The mailbox number depends on the cell phone service provider.

Navigating

Introduction

Let the "Global Positioning System" (GPS) lead you to your destination!

Studying complicated maps, skimming through confusing atlases - that is all in the past! Now simply enter your desired destination in the navigation system and follow the directions given. Or you can navigate to your destination with up to nine stopovers.

The system provides directions in the form of spoken cues that inform you about all driving maneuvers early enough to perform them. In what language would you like to hear the navigation announcements? You can choose from English, French and Spanish. You can repeat the current navigation announcement by pressing the right thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 80*.

The route is shown on a map in the MMI display ⇨ *page 66*. You can also display information about your route in the driver information system ⇨ *page 67*.

You do not want to follow one of the directions? No problem! The navigation system recalculates the route based on the current vehicle position. When dynamic route is activated, the navigation system takes traffic reports into account so you can reach your destination more quickly.

The navigation system will notify you if your vehicle is in a location the system does not recognize (such as a parking lot or parking garage).

WARNING

- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Refer to and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 6, Traffic safety tips*.
- Obey all traffic laws when driving.
- The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Note

- If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.
- Adjust the volume of the navigation system so signals from outside the vehicle such as police and fire sirens can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

- Snow and objects on the GPS antenna or shade from trees and large buildings can prevent satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
- When the vehicle is at an altitude above approximately 3000 meters, the MMI hard drive shuts down temporarily to protect it. Navigation mode and the Jukebox are not available when that happens. All of the MMI functions will be available again as usual once you start the engine again at a location below 3000 meters.
- Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.
- Contact your authorized Audi dealer for information on updating the navigation information.

Starting Navigation mode



Fig. 69 Entry field

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- Press the NAV function button. The input field ⇨ *fig. 69* or the last active navigation menu appears in the MMI display.

The menu that was open the last time you used the navigation system is shown in the MMI display. Press the NAV function button again while in Navigation mode to switch to the input field.

Tips

The navigation system can be opened in demo mode for simulations or planning purposes when the vehicle is stationary ⇨ *page 72*.

Entering a destination

Tips for entering a destination



Fig. 70 Entering the destination using the speller

Cities

When making an entry with the speller, the system suggests cities that you have entered in the past. The suggested city is shown in the speller input field ⇨ *fig. 70*. Additional cities that match your entry are listed below. The number of cities found is displayed at the bottom right Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 70*.

If the desired city is shown in the speller input field or the list below, you can press and hold the control knob to switch to the city list.

Street

You can also begin entering a destination with the street name. From the list of suggestions that follows, select a city in which you would like to enter a street or select the menu item **In all cities** to search for a streets independent of the location. When entering the street, the system suggests street names that match the entry.

After selecting the street, you can define the destination in detail by entering an **Intersection** or **House number**.

Points of interest in a city

By selecting a point of interest, you can select landmarks and public places (hospitals, movie theaters, recreation areas, etc.) as destinations.

Downtown (end entry)

The navigation system calculates the route to the center of the city entered.

Select destination on map

You can select a new destination from the map by moving the crosshairs horizontally, vertically or diagonally with the joystick ⇨ *page 24* ⇨ *page 62*.

Tips

Has your route or tour plan changed? No problem! Simply select the destination/ stopover with he control knob and press ▶

the knob. You can now **Drive to this destination now** or **Change**, **Move** or **Delete** the destination/stopover.

Entering a destination with an address

A single destination always consists of a region and city. You can pinpoint the destination more closely by entering a street name or point of interest.



Fig. 71 Entering a house number/intersection

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- If the input field ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* is not shown in the MMI display, press the NAV function button.
- Turn the control knob to **Region** and press the knob. A list of regions is displayed.
- Turn the control knob to select a region and press the knob to enter that region into the input field.
- Turn the control knob to **City/ZIP** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- Enter the city or ZIP code using the speller and confirm the entry with **OK**.
- To complete the entry, turn the control knob to **Downtown (end entry)** and press the knob, or
- To enter additional information about the destination or to enter a stopover, turn the control knob to **Street** or **Point of interest in city** and press the knob.
- Entering additional information.
- To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

To enter a house number or intersection after you have completed entering your destination, turn and press the control knob to select the line (1) ⇨ *fig. 71* and complete your entry.

Tips

To repeat the last navigation announcement, press the **Nav-Info** control button ⇨ *page 71* or the right thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 75*.

Setting a destination from the map

A point on the map can be selected as a destination or stopover, stored in the directory or called up.*



Fig. 72 Changing the destination with the crosshairs



Fig. 73 Setting a map location as the destination

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- Press the **Map** control button. A map is shown in the MMI display. ▶

- ▸ Slide the crosshairs ⇨ *fig. 72* horizontally, vertically or diagonally with the joystick to the desired destination ⇨ *page 24*.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The map side menu is activated.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Opt. menu** and press the knob. The **Map position** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as destination** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as single destination** or **Set as stopover** ⇨ *page 64* and press the knob.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

If a destination is *not* present in the navigation data, you can move the crosshairs to the location of the desired city and set the geodata as a destination or add an entry in the directory.

Tips

– If you stop moving the crosshairs for a moment, additional information about the position of the crosshairs (such as city or street name if available) will be displayed.
– Turn the control knob to the left or right to increase or decrease the map scale in order to locate the desired destination more quickly with the crosshairs.

Entering a point of interest

Points of interest can be selected in the input field when entering single destinations. Six search categories are available.

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Point of interest** ⇨ *page 62, fig. 71* and press the knob. A list with search categories for points of interest appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Top categories** for example and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a category such as **Next parking lot**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list, for example of parking lots, appears in the MMI display. Arrows indicate the direction and the distance from the vehicle to the point of interest.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a point of interest that is displayed and press the control knob. Details about the point of interest are displayed.
- ▸ To set the point of interest as a destination, turn the control knob to **Set as destination** and press the knob.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

Additional search categories are:

In immediate vicinity

The point of interest is within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function is useful when planning stopovers.

In vicinity of destination

The point of interest is in the vicinity of a destination that has been entered. For example, you can find a hotel in the destination city with this function. Points of interest can be selected from various categories.

In new city

Enter the name of the city using the speller. You can either search for the point of interest by name or select it from various categories. This function is useful for searching for points of interest in a city independent from the destination. ▶

Nationwide

You can either search for the point of interest by name or select it from various categories. The point of interest is independent from the vehicle position and navigation destination. For example, you can navigate to an airport in the selected country using this function.

Tips

– The points of interest in the **Top categories**, **In immediate vicinity** and **In vicinity of destination** search categories are sorted according to straight-line distance. The distance from the vehicle to the point of interest is updated automatically.
– When calculating the distance to a point of interest, the straight-line distance (empty arrow) is displayed first and then the actual driving distance (solid arrow). The points of interested are sorted according to straight-line distance from your current location.
– Some list entries cannot be displayed completely in the MMI display because they have too many letters/numbers. If you select these entries with the control knob, a separate window containing detailed information about the selected entry will open.

Entering a destination from the memory

Your previous destinations are stored automatically and be loaded directly as navigation destinations.

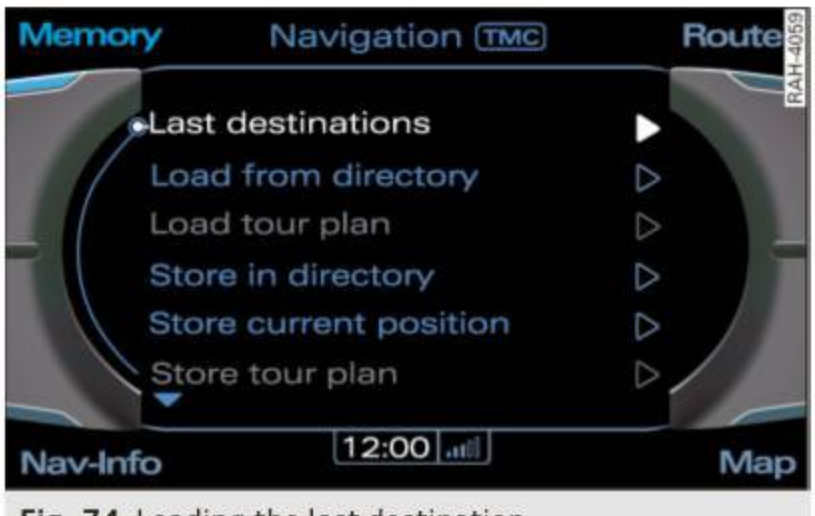


Fig. 74 Loading the last destination

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button ⇨ *fig. 74*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Last destinations** ⇨ *fig. 74*.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list with the last destinations you entered appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to select a destination.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The destination data is set as a destination/stopover.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

Tips

The list of previous destinations can be erased ⇨ *page 73*.

Entering a stopover

You can include up to nine stopovers and the end destination in the tour plan.



Fig. 75 Tour plan

Requirement: The Navigation mode must be started ⇨ *page 61*, a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 61* and the input field must be displayed ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69*.

Entering stopover with an address

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Add stopover** and press the knob. ▶

- ▸ Enter the stopover ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as stopover** and press the knob.
- ▸ To select the desired location in the tour plan, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

Setting a stopover from the map

- ▸ Press the **Map** control button. A map is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Select a stopover in the map ⇨ *page 62, fig. 72*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as stopover** and press the knob.
- ▸ To select the desired location in the tour plan, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

Setting a stopover from the memory

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Add stopover** and press the knob.
- ▸ Select a destination from the list of the last destinations you entered ⇨ *page 64*.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The destination data is set as the stopover.
- ▸ To select the desired location in the tour plan, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

To delete all stopovers from the tour plan, turn the control knob to **Enter single destination** and confirm the message in the MMI display with **Yes**.

Tips

Has your route or tour plan changed? No problem! Simply select the destination/stopover with he control knob and press the knob. You can now **Drive to this destination now** or **Change**, **Move** or **Delete** the destination/stopover.

Alternative route

Select your preferred route to a single destination from up to three suggested routes.

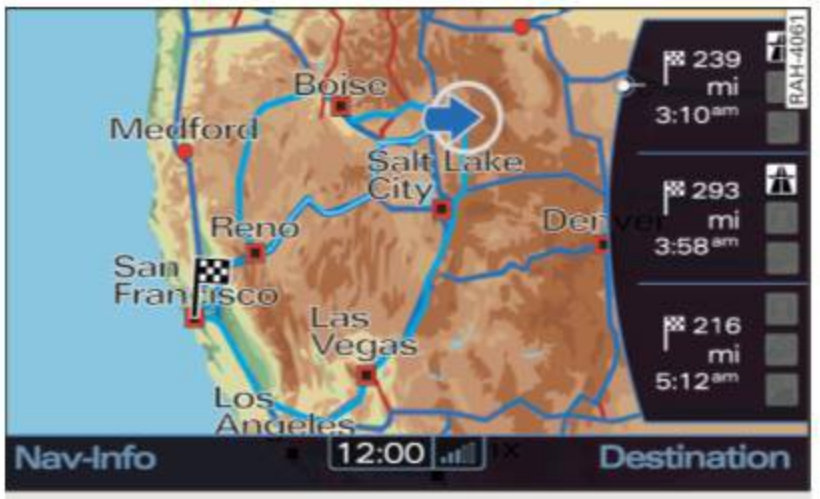


Fig. 76 Suggested routes

The route highlighted after switching to the map display is the route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected ⇨ *page 70*. For example, if you have selected **Short** in the **Route options** menu, the shortest route is highlighted. If possible, three alternative routes with the same route criteria will be offered for your selection.

The suggested routes and your criteria are displayed in the route side menu in the MMI display.

Information applicable to the route you have selected is highlighted in white:

– Distance to the destination and calculated arrival time
– Symbols for using highways, toll roads or ferries on the planned route

You can select the possible routing in the alternative routes by turning and pressing the control knob. ▸

Tips

The routes may overlap if there are only a few routes available to the destination.

Stopping route guidance

Requirement: Route guidance must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the NAV function button, or
- ▸ Press the **Destination** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Stop route guidance** and press the knob.

You can also stop route guidance by entering a new destination ⇨ *page 62*.

Tips

The data and settings remain entered when route guidance is stopped.

Display

In the MMI display



Fig. 77 Map with inactive side menu



Fig. 78 Map with active side menu

If you press the **Map** control button once route guidance has started, the map with inactive side menu ⇨ *fig. 77* will appear in the MMI display.

In this view, you can turn the control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the map scale. You can move the crosshairs in the map with the joystick to select a city ⇨ *page 24*.

Press the control knob to activate the side menu ⇨ *fig. 78*. You can now change the map display in the side menu. Turn the control knob to the desired location and press the knob.

Press the RETURN button to leave the side menu.

① Direction. The map is either oriented to the **north** or according to the **dir. of travel** ⇨ *page 71*. You can switch between north and the direction of travel by selecting the direction in the active side menu and pressing the control knob. This setting is saved.

② Scale. Turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale. You can also change the scale in the active side menu.

③ Distance to destination/stopover

④ Calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover

⑤ TMC status display

⑥ Altitude display

⑦ **Dest.** control button. Change to input field ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* or the tour plan ⇨ *page 64, fig. 75*.

⑧ Examples of selected map contents

⑨ Vehicle location

⑩ Display of the geocoordinates where the crosshairs are located (latitude and longitude)

⑪ If you select the map content with the crosshairs, available information such as the address, telephone number or traffic reports will be displayed.

⑫ Move along the route. This function can be used while route guidance is active. ▸

Turn the control knob to the left or right to move the map along the current route.

⑬ Map location menu. The location of the crosshairs can be set at the destination or stopover, stored in the directory or called up ⇨ *page 62*. The geocoordinates (latitude and longitude) of the crosshairs are displayed.

Tips

You can choose between four map types ⇨ *page 71*.

In the driver information system

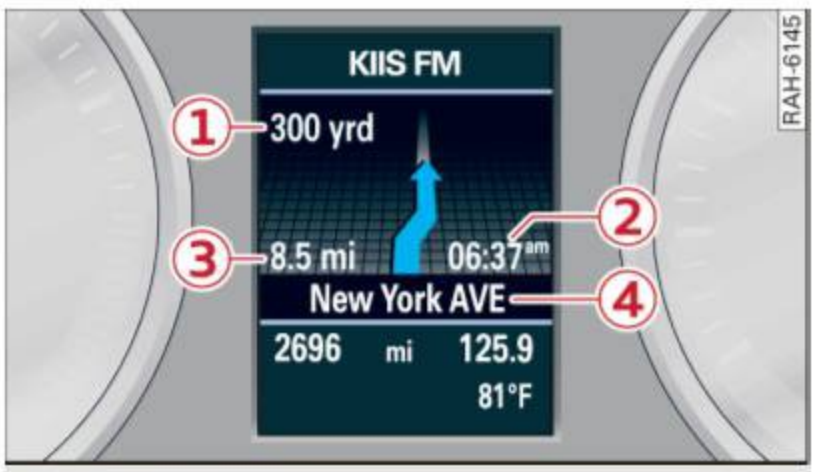


Fig. 79 Lane display



Fig. 80 Turn display

Once you have entered a destination or tour and started route guidance, the navigation information will be displayed in the driver information system. If you select another function such as the radio with the multifunction steering wheel, the navigation will be replaced with the selected function ⇨ *page 75*.

① Distance until change of direction
② Calculated arrival time
③ Total mileage to the destination/stopover
④ Name of the current highway or street. An arrow in front of the street name indicates that you should turn onto that street.
⑤ Maneuver arrow. An upcoming turn is also indicated.
⑥ Bar graph. A bar graph appears when a direction arrow is displayed. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

WARNING

The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Tips

An exclamation mark "!" in front of the street name indicates that the information about this street or this section of the route is not complete in the navigation data that the MMI contains. Obey traffic laws such as one-way streets or pedestrian zones.

Storing a destination

In the directory (single destination)

A single destination can either be stored as a new address car or assigned to an existing one.



Fig. 81 Address card

Requirement: You must enter a single destination ⇨ *page 61*. ▶

Storing a destination as a new address card

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store in directory** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **New entry** and press the knob. An input field appears ⇨ *fig. 81*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Name** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name with the speller.
- ▸ Enter additional data.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob.

Assigning the destination to an existing address card

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store in directory** and press the knob.
- ▸ To assign the destination to an address card, turn the control knob to an entry, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob to search for an address card. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name of the entry you would like to search for, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob in the speller to **LIST** and press the knob. All stored directory entries are listed.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired entry and press the knob. The address card opens.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob.

If you have already stored a destination for an existing address card, the new destination automatically overwrites the old destination.

Check the box for the **display as top destination** function to access the destination quickly. Top destinations are listed in the input menu ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* and can be selected there directly.

Tips

- You can use the **Edit directory** function to access the address card to enter more information ⇨ *page 48*.
- For information on managing the directory, refer to ⇨ *page 44*.

Storing a tour plan

Tour plans can be stored and loaded later as a new navigation destination.

Requirement: You have entered a tour plan ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store tour plan**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter a name for the tour plan using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob. The tour plan entered is stored.

If the **Store tour plan** function is *grayed out*, either the tour memory is full or no tour plan was entered. Please delete any tours you do not need from the memory ⇨ *page 70* or enter a tour plan.

Loading a destination

Loading from the directory



Fig. 82 Loading a destination from the directory

Requirement: Navigation mode must be started ⇨ *page 61* and a navigation destination must be stored in the directory ⇨ *page 48*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Load from directory**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list of entries appears in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 82*.
- ▸ To select a destination from the list, turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob to search for an entry. You can now search for a name using the speller.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display. An arrow appears in the driver information system.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

Loading a tour plan

Stored tour plans can be loaded as a new navigation destination.

Requirement: Navigation mode must be started ⇨ *page 61* and a tour must be stored ⇨ *page 68*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Load tour plan**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list of entries appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a tour from the list, turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob, or
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

Display traffic reports in the map

Traffic reports can be displayed in the map.

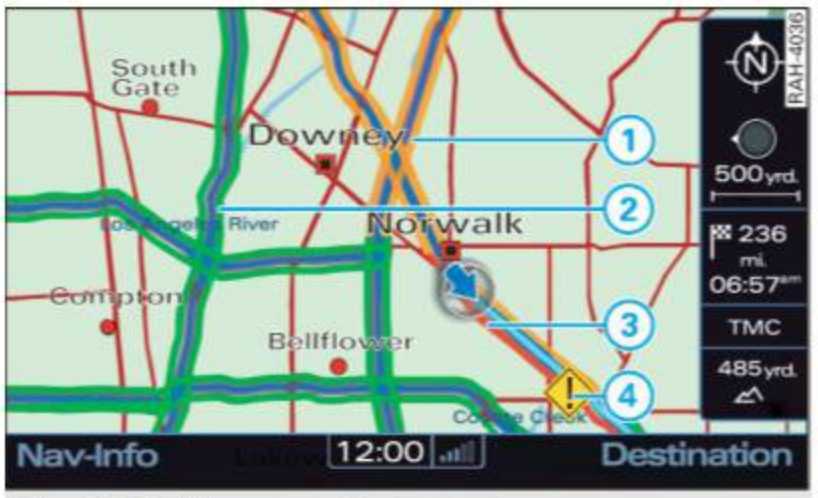


Fig. 83 Traffic reports display in the map

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Map content** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Traffic information** and press the knob.

The traffic information is displayed in the map with colored lines:

① orange lines: slow traffic
② green lines: free flow traffic
③ red lines: stop and go

A colored warning symbol ④ in the map indicates there is a traffic incident directly ahead.

In addition to traffic reports, you can also display (✓) or hide additional information such as expressway exits, 3D landmarks or restaurants in the map.

Tips

TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. Please contact Sirius Canada for details.

Additional settings

Top destination

- ▸ Select: NAV function button.

You can activate the **Display as top destination** function (✓) when storing a navigation ▸

destination in the directory. Top destinations are displayed at the end of the input field ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* and can be selected directly when entering a destination.

Store current position

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Memory** control button > **Store current position**.

The current vehicle position is added to a new/existing entry in the directory.

Deleting a tour plan

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Memory** control button > **Delete tour plan**.

Stored tour plans can be deleted individually.

Route list

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Route** control button > **Route list**.

The route list is only visible when route guidance is active. It contains the following information:

– Information on the route characteristics
– Length of the route sections
– Street names

On longer route sections, additional information may be displayed such as possible junctions when driving on highways.

Route criteria

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Route** control button > **Route criteria**.

The route is calculated based on various criteria.

Alternative routes

The option to select from up to three suggested routes to a single destination can be switched on (✓) or off.

Dyn. route

When dynamic route is switched on, the route is adapted automatically[1)] according to traffic conditions.

If the system does not calculate a detour even though you have selected Dynamic route **on** and a traffic jam was reported on the calculated route, then the detour the system calculated would take more time than the time spent waiting in the traffic jam.

Route options

You can select a **short**, **fast** or **economical** route.

Highway/Toll road/Ferry

Select the **avoid** option if the navigation system should not include expressways, toll roads or ferries when calculating a route.

Tips

If avoiding a criterion makes route guidance impossible, that criterion will still be used when calculating the route.

Avoiding a route

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Route** control button > **Avoid route from here**.

When route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified. The navigation system calculates an alternative route.

You can adjust the length of the route to be avoided by turning the control knob.

When you restart route guidance, the area to be avoided must be entered again if you would still like to avoid it.

Tips

If the MMI does not calculate an alternative route, that means one is not available.

1) Only with a valid SDARS subscription.

Information

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Nav-Info** control button.

When route guidance is active, you will receive the following information about your destination:

– Receivable satellites
– Data about the vehicle location: current street, data about the geographical location of the vehicle (latitude and longitude, altitude)
– Destination city/stopovers
– Calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover
– Distance to destination/stopover

The last navigation announcement is repeated.

Calling: (telephone number)*

If telephone numbers for a point of interest are stored in the MMI navigation data and your vehicle is equipped with a *factory installed* telephone*, you can call the selected point of interest. For example, you can make reservations at a restaurant before you reach your destination.

Map display

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Map display**.

Day

The map is displayed with a light background.

Night

The map is displayed with a dark background.

Auto

The map display changes from day to night when the headlights are switched on.

Orientation

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Orientation**.

North[1)]

The map is oriented to the north.

Dir. of travel

The map is oriented to the direction of travel. At a scale of 100 km, the map is oriented to the north.

Auto

At a scale up to 1.5 miles (2.41 km), the map is oriented to the direction of travel. At a scale greater than 1.5 miles (2.41 km), the map is oriented to the north.

Map type

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Map type**.

Destination

The destination is marked with a destination flag. The map indicates the destination is oriented to the north.

Position 2D

The current vehicle position is displayed. The map orientation corresponds to the setting in the **Orientation** menu ⇨ *page 71*.

Position 3D

The current vehicle position is displayed in a three-dimensional terrain map. The **Dir. of travel** orientation is automatically selected ⇨ *page 71*. The map orientation is set to **North** when the scale is 100 km or greater. At a scale between 30 - 100 m, the display will show three-dimensional city models and landmarks.

Overview

The entire route from the vehicle location to the destination is displayed on the map. The ▶

1) Only possible in the 2D map type display

map scale depends on the length of the route. The map is oriented to the north.

Automatic zoom

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Autom. zoom**.

When automatic zoom is switched on, the map automatically zooms to the intersection. This provides a detailed display and makes it easier to recognize the streets. The map is oriented to the direction of travel when it is zoomed in. The three-dimensional city model is hidden for a short time.

Additional information

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Addit. info**.

On

The **Route** and **Exit** information is displayed on the map.

Route

Information on upcoming maneuvers or traffic reports are displayed in the left half of the map. The right half of the map continues to show the map display you have selected.

Exit

The left half of the map contains a window that shows expressway exits. The right half of the map continues to show the map display you have selected. Parallel to this, the window also shows an enlarged view of the intersection area.

The updated distance to the turn is displayed next to the enlarged view. The name of the street you will turn onto, the street number and/or name of the exit and the direction of travel are also displayed at the same time.

Off

No additional info is shown in the MMI display.

Voice guidance

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Voice guid.**.

The navigation announcements in the navigation mode can be **Complete** or **Compact**.

With **off**, only *important* announcements are played during route guidance. You can press the right thumbwheel ④ ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to play a navigation announcement.

Spoken cues (phone)

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Spoken cue**.

With the **Off (phone)** setting, navigation announcements play during route guidance but they do *not* play during a phone call.

Volume of spoken cues

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Volume of spoken cues**.

Turn the control knob to the left or right to adjust the volume of the navigation announcements. Press the control knob to leave the menu.

Presentation mode

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Set starting point** or **Demo mode**.

You enter a starting point manually when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position, for example. Start demo mode to simulate route guidance. The demo mode helps you effectively plan and display a route by showing map contents or route criteria.

Tips

Route simulation guidance in demo mode is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons.

Deleting last destinations

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Memory** control button > **Delete last destinations**.

The destinations you have entered last are automatically stored ⇨ *page 64*. They can be deleted individually or all at once.

Calling up traffic information

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service

TMC traffic reports can be shown in the MMI display through Sirius* (satellite radio) ⇨ *page 32*. This happens automatically and silently. Even more practical is the fact that the MMI uses these messages when dynamic route is switched on to navigate around traffic problems such as traffic jams, when possible ⇨ *page 70*.

Traffic report reception is indicated by the **TMC** symbol in the title line in the Navigation and Info modes:

TMC symbol	Explanation
The TMC symbol is displayed	TMC stations are available and dynamic navigation is switched **on** ⇨ *page 70*.
The TMC symbol is crossed out	TMC stations are *not* available and dynamic navigation is switched **on**.
No TMC symbol	Dynamic navigation is switched **off**.

Calling up TMC traffic reports

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service

The TMC traffic reports are sorted according to the distance from the current position. Traffic reports for an active route are displayed first.

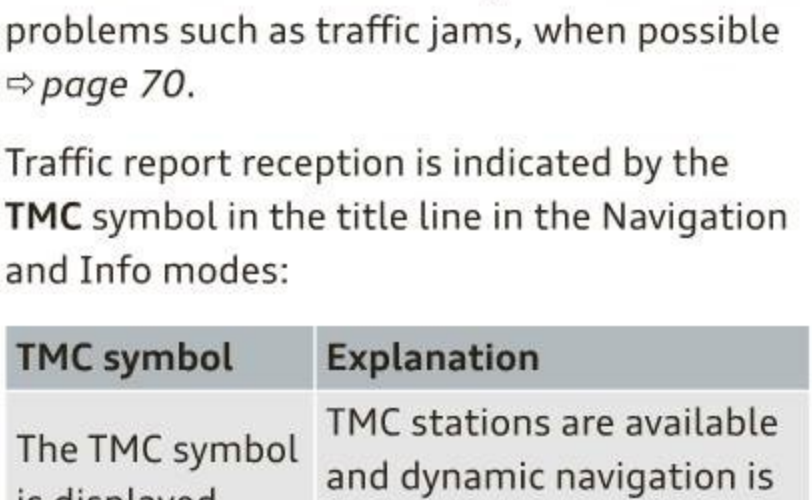


Fig. 84 Calling up traffic reports

- Press the INFO function button.
- Turn the control knob to an entry.
- Press the control knob. A detailed view is displayed.
- To call up the next traffic report in the detailed view, turn the control knob to **Next message** and press the knob.

When route guidance is active, traffic reports that affect your route are displayed in order based on distance and marked with a colored symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 84*. A traffic incident that is immediately head is displayed first.

All remaining traffic reports are listed last with a grayed-out symbol and sorted according to straight-line distance from the current position ② ⇨ *fig. 84*.

Traffic reports that are especially important such as a driver driving the wrong way are displayed automatically in the MMI display. Press the RETURN button or the control knob to cancel the report.

When route guidance is deactivated, traffic reports are displayed with a colored symbol and sorted according to distance from the current position.

Tips

– To use the traffic message channel (TMC), you must contract the Sirius* service provider ⇨ *page 32*.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. Please contact Sirius Canada for details.

General operation

Introduction

You can call up and control the MMI functions such as Navigation, Telephone, Radio, Media or the voice recognition system with the multifunction steering wheel.*

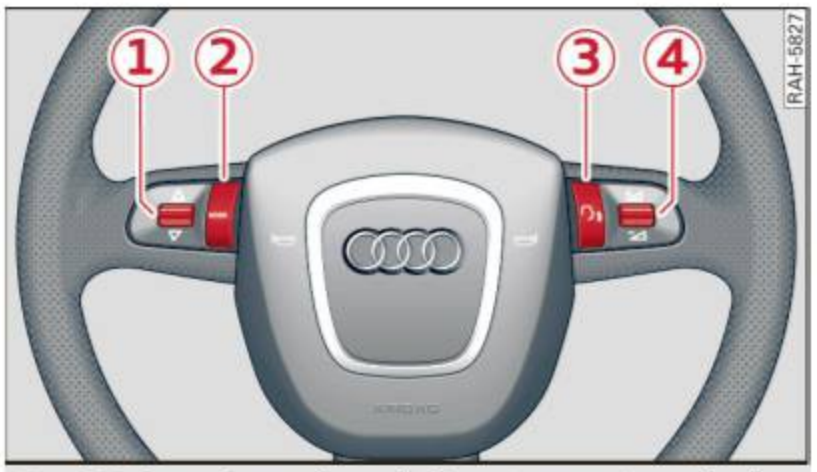


Fig. 85 Controls on the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 86 Display in the driver information system

With the multifunction steering wheel, you can control selected functions of the active audio source, telephone* or navigation with active route guidance without taking your hands off the wheel. It's very convenient!

The functions are shown in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 86*. You can also switch the voice recognition system on and off and change the volume with the multifunction steering wheel.

It is operated by pressing and rolling the buttons ① to ④ ⇨ *fig. 85*.

– Pressing the MODE ② button multiple times changes between navigation, the telephone* and the active audio source. The function is also displayed in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 86*. You can exit the submenu for the active function by pressing the MODE button.
– You can select a submenu for the active function by rolling the left thumbwheel ①.
– The voice recognition system is activated by pressing the Talk button ③. Pressing and holding the Talk button again ends the dialogue.
– Rolling the right thumbwheel ④ up/down increases/decreases the volume.

Tips

– You can switch the navigation display off with the Reset button on the windshield washer stalk. Comprehensive information on this topic can be found in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.
– The trip computer is also displayed in the driver information system. Comprehensive information on this topic can be found in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.

Adjusting the volume

You can change the volume of the active audio source and the navigation announcements with the multifunction steering wheel.

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

Increasing and decreasing the volume

▸ Roll the right thumbwheel ④ ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* up/down.

Muting

▸ To mute the MMI, roll the right thumbwheel ④ down until a speaker symbol with a line through it appears in the status line in the MMI display. If the drive is active, it will be stopped.
▸ Roll the right thumbwheel up to deactivate the mute or pause function. The drive that was stopped will start playing again.

Navigation announcements

▸ Press the right thumbwheel ④. The last navigation announcement is repeated. ▶

▸ To change the volume, roll the right thumbwheel ④ up or down while an announcement is playing.

Listening to the radio

Selecting the radio



Fig. 87 Frequency band list

Requirement: The radio is on ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Press the MODE button ② ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* until the radio menu appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 87*.

For detailed information about the radio function, refer to ⇨ *page 31*.

Selecting the frequency band

The three frequency bands FM, AM and Sirius (satellite radio) are displayed in the title line of the driver information system.*

Requirement: The radio menu is displayed ⇨ *page 76*.

▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* down to a frequency band.
▸ Press the left thumbwheel to select the frequency band.

Selecting a station from the station list



Fig. 88 Radio menu

Requirement: The radio menu is displayed ⇨ *fig. 88*.

▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* down/up to a radio station.
▸ Press the left thumbwheel to select the station.

Selecting a stored station

Requirement: The radio menu is displayed ⇨ *page 76, fig. 88* and a station is stored in the preset list ⇨ *page 34*.

▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Presets**.
▸ Press the left thumbwheel. The preset list is displayed.
▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to a radio station and press the left thumbwheel. The radio station is selected.

Playing media

Calling up media



Fig. 89 Track list

Requirement: The selected source must contain audio files. ▶

- Press the MODE button (2) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* repeatedly until a track list ⇨ *page 77, fig. 91* or folder structure ⇨ *page 37* appears in the driver information system.

For detailed information about the media function, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.

Tips

Select an audio source or a CD in the CD changer* through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 12*.

Selecting a folder



Fig. 90 Jukebox folder structure

Requirement: A folder must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 90*.

- Roll the left thumbwheel (1) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to a folder ⇨ *fig. 90*.
- Press the left thumbwheel to select the folder.

Tips

– To move to the next highest level, turn the left thumbwheel to the folder **Go up** ⇨ *page 77, fig. 91* and press the thumbwheel.
– You can scroll through long lists of folders quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of folders.

Selecting a track



Fig. 91 Track list

Requirement: Tracks must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 91*.

- Roll the left thumbwheel (1) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to a track ⇨ *fig. 91*.
- Press the left thumbwheel to select the track.

Tips

You can scroll through long lists of tracks quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of tracks.

Pausing/resuming playback

Requirement: And audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- Turn the right thumbwheel (4) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* all the way down to pause playback.
- Turn the right thumbwheel all the way up to resume playback.

Calling

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Calling in the vehicle has become an everyday activity. You can operate all of the relevant telephone functions safely and easily using the multifunction steering wheel.

The following messages could appear in the driver information system: ▶

Please wait ...	The connection between the MMI and the paired cell phone is being established.
No connection	There is no connection to the phone network.
Call	There is an incoming call. The caller's phone number will also be displayed if it was transmitted.
Busy	The number dialed is busy.
Automatic redial	The last number dialed is dialed again automatically after a brief waiting period.
Telephone is switched off	The telephone is switched off.
Connecting	The connection is established.
End call	The connection has ended.
No entries available	The directory does not contain any entries or the entries have not been read into the MMI.
Please connect phone	The telephone is not connected with the vehicle.

Would you like to learn more about operating the telephone in your vehicle? You will find a detailed description in ⇨ *page 53*.

Tips

- The telephone functions can only be controlled on the multifunction steering wheel if the telephone equipment was installed *at the factory*.
- The telephone functions depend on the cell phone and whether they are supported by your cell phone service provider or not. Refer to www.audiusa.com/bluetooth (www.audicanada.ca/bluetooth) for compatible phone list.

Selecting telephone

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 92 Telephone menu

Requirement: The cell phone package ⇨ *page 18* has been activated.

▸ Press the MODE button until the Telephone menu appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 92*.

The following options are shown in the telephone menu:

– Directory: contains the MMI directory entries ⇨ *page 44*.
– Dialed numbers: contains the telephone numbers dialed most recently.
– Missed calls: contains the most recent calls not received.
– Received calls: contains the most recently received calls.

You can dial the selected phone number directly from the call lists. Press the MODE button ② to close an open call list.

Dialing a phone number and ending a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Phone numbers stored in the directory and in the call lists can be dialed.



Fig. 93 List of directory entries

Requirement: The Telephone menu is displayed ⇨ *page 78, fig. 92*.

Calling

- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Dialed numbers**, **Directory**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls** ⇨ *page 78, fig. 92*.
- ▸ Press the left thumbwheel. A list with entries appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 93*.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to an entry and press the left thumbwheel.

Making another call

- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Hold** and press the left thumbwheel. The phone call is placed on hold.
- ▸ Press the MODE button ② ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* until the Telephone menu ⇨ *page 78, fig. 92* is displayed in the driver information system.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel either to one of the call lists or the **Directory** and press the left thumbwheel ⇨ *fig. 93*. A list with entries appears in the driver information system.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to the entry and press the left thumbwheel. All telephone numbers stored for that entry are displayed.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to a phone number and press the left thumbwheel. The phone call is made and the active audio sources is muted.

Ending a call

- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to **End call** and press the left thumbwheel.

If several phone numbers are stored in a directory entry, the list with stored numbers is displayed first when the entry is selected. Roll the left thumbwheel ① to the desired phone number and press the left thumbwheel.

When you have ended an active call, the call on hold remains on hold. Select **Resume** and press the left thumbwheel to resume the call on hold.

Tips

- – The multifunction steering wheel can only be used to dial stored telephone numbers. Enter a new phone number using the MMI speller ⇨ *page 54* or the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 85*.
- – The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- – If you activate **Off (phone)** while in navigation mode, navigation announcements will not play during a call ⇨ *page 72*.
- – You can scroll through the directory entries quickly in blocks by rolling the left thumbwheel.

Answering/ignoring a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

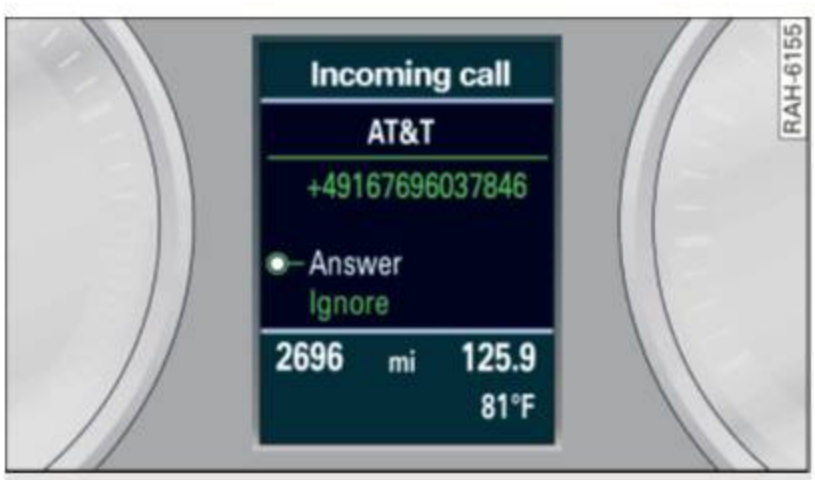


Fig. 94 Incoming call ▶

Requirement: There must be an incoming call ⇨ *fig. 94*.

Answering a call

- Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Answer** and press the left thumbwheel.

Ignoring a call

- Roll the left thumbwheel to **Ignore** and press the left thumbwheel.

The *Name*, *Phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the driver information system display depending on whether the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

Options during a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

When there is an incoming call during an active phone call, the **Replace** and **Ignore** functions appear in the driver information system.

If you select **Replace**, the active call will be replaced with the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored. A call on hold remains in queue.

Tips

The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone to be alerted to an incoming call during an active call. The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Navigating

Calling up navigation



Fig. 95 Navigation in the driver information system

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- Press the MODE button ② ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* until navigation appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 95*.

For detailed information about the navigation function, refer to ⇨ *page 60*.

Tips

You can switch the navigation display off with the reset button on the windshield washer stalk. Comprehensive information on this topic can be found in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.

Repeating navigation announcements

- Press the right thumbwheel ④ ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to repeat the last navigation announcement.

Name tag

Switching the voice recognition system on and off

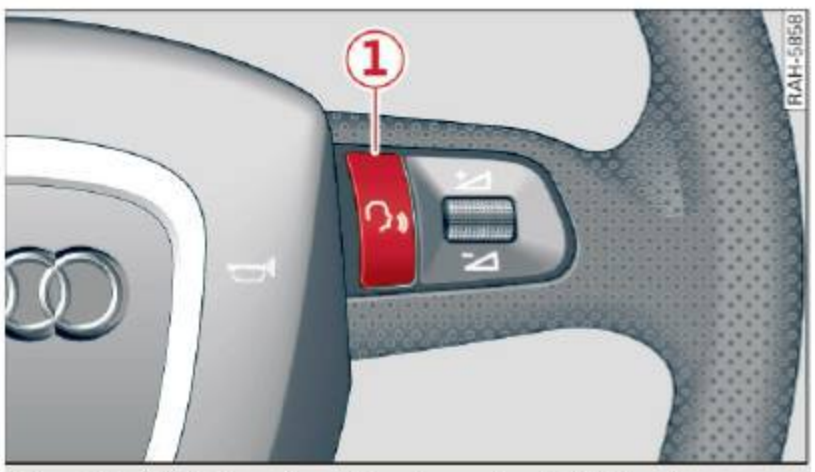


Fig. 96 Multi-function steering wheel: Talk button

Switching on

▸ Press button (1) ⇨ *fig. 96*.

Switching off

▸ Press and hold the button until the message **Cancel** plays.

The input signal **Beep** plays when the system is ready for dialogue. Then the desired functions can be selected using voice commands ⇨ *page 82*.

Tips

For a detailed description of the voice recognition system, refer to ⇨ *page 82*.

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- NAVIGATION
- TELEPHONE
- DIRECTORY

- HELP
- HELP VOICE RECOGNITION
- HELP NAVIGATION
- HELP TELEPHONE
- HELP DIRECTORY
- HELP MAP

- ENTER DESTINATION
- NAVIGATE TO (XY)
- CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE
- MAP
- CALL (XY)
- DIAL NUMBER
- REDIAL

TELEPHONE / DIRECTORY

- DIAL NUMBER
  - CORRECT / DELETE NUMBER
  - REPEAT
  - DIAL
- REDIAL
- CALL (XY)
  (BUSINESS / PRIVATE / LAND LINE / CELL)
- RECEIVED CALLS
- DIALED NUMBERS
- MISSED CALLS

- CALL (XY)
- NAVIGATE TO (XY)
- FIND ENTRY
- STORE NAME
- READ NAME

NAVIGATION / MAP

- ENTER DESTINATION
- NAVIGATE TO (XY)
- LAST DESTINATIONS
- ENTER COUNTRY
- ENTER ZIP / CITY
- ENTER CENTER
- ENTER STREET
- ENTER HOUSE NUMBER
- ENTER INTERSECTION
- START / CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE
- ENTER STREET IN VICINITY
- SHORT / FAST / ECON. ROUTE
- DYNAMIC ROUTE GUIDANCE ON / OFF
- ROUTE LIST
- VOICE GUIDANCE ON / OFF
- ENTER POINT OF INTEREST

- NEXT GAS STATION
- NEXT DIESEL GAS STATION
- NEXT PARKING LOT
- NEXT RESTAURANT
- NEXT ACCOMMODATION
- NEXT HOSPITAL
- NEXT AUDI DEALER
- NEXT POLICE STATION
- NEXT ATM
- NEXT COFFEE SHOP
- MAP ON / OFF
- POSITION 2D / 3D MAP
- DAY / NIGHT MAP
- DESTINATION / OVERVIEW MAP
- SCALE (XY) KM / METRE / MILE / YARD

Fig. 97 Voice recognition system command overview

Voice recognition system

Introduction

You can control many MMI functions through the voice recognition system.

With the voice recognition system, you can switch between the various modes easily by voice, for example for Navigation to Telephone*. In conjunction with hands-free operation it is not necessary to pick up the cell phone. The voice recognition system recognizes commands and numbers regardless of the speaker.

Individual training improves the recognition function of the voice recognition system by adapting it to your voice or pronunciation ⇨ *page 29*.

The voice recognition system automatically creates a name tag for each entry in the directory. Using the voice recognition system, you can select the private or business address of an entry as a navigation destination or call up the entry. You can also access other functions: you can call up call lists, view the route list for a destination or show the map view in the MMI display ⇨ *page 87*.

It is okay if you do not know a particular command. Simply say the command **HELP** when the voice recognition system is switched on. The system will tell you the commands that are possible at that time or give you a tip ⇨ *page 84*. For the most important voice recognition system commands, refer to the command overview ⇨ *fig. 97*.

In which language would you like to use the voice recognition system? You can choose from English, French and Spanish ⇨ *page 28*.

For the system to understand you

– Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when there is loud ambient noise.
– Pronounce the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
– Do not speak a command when the voice recognition system is making an announcement.
– Close the doors, the windows and the sunroof* to reduce ambient noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
– Do not direct the air vents toward the hands-free microphone that is close to the front interior lights.
– Only use the system from the driver's position since the hands-free microphone is oriented toward that position.

Unrecognized voice commands

The systems reacts to your input with audible feedback. If a voice command is not recognized, the system asks **Pardon?** and asks you to repeat the command. After the third unsuccessful attempt, you will hear the message **Cancel** and the dialog ends.

WARNING

– Please devote your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use voice recognition in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

Please note that the voice recognition system is not available in Cabriolet models.

General operation

Switching on and off

You can switch the voice recognition system on and off with the multifunction steering wheel.

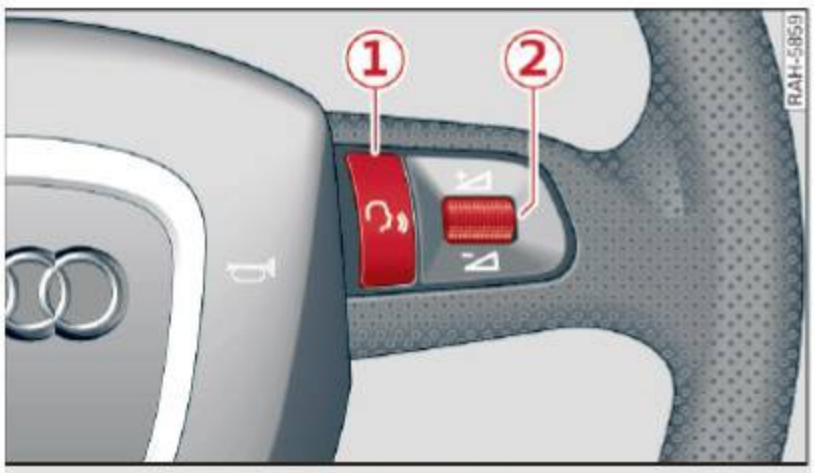


Fig. 98 Talk button and right thumbwheel

Requirement: The ignition and the MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*, the A/C system must not be operated and you must not have a phone call in progress.

- ▸ Press the Talk button ① ⇨ *fig. 98* on the multifunction steering wheel briefly to switch the voice recognition system on. The input signal **Beep** indicates that the voice recognition system is ready. The status symbol ① ⇨ *page 84, fig. 99* appears in the MMI display. An active audio source is muted.
- ▸ Say the desired command.
- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system off, speak the command **CANCEL**, or
- ▸ Press the Talk button ① ⇨ *fig. 98* and hold it down until you hear the message **Cancel**.

You can shorten a message by pressing the Talk button and speaking a new command.

Tips

- You can also deactivate the voice recognition system by pressing any button on the MMI control panel in the center console ⇨ *page 21*.
- Traffic announcements do not play during the dialog.
- The dialog stops when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog is cancelled if you answer the call.

Operating the system



Fig. 99 Help texts in the MMI display



Fig. 100 Selecting an entry from the list

Commands

The voice recognition system uses two types of commands:

- Commands for the active mode such as **LAST DESTINATIONS** in the **Navigation** mode
- Global commands (regardless of mode) such as **NAVIGATION**

The command overview ⇨ *page 82, fig. 97* provides an overview of the most important voice recognition system commands.

Selecting an entry from a list

The entries in a list such as missed calls, directory entries, street names, etc. are shown in the MMI display with item numbers ⇨ *fig. 100*. You can select a line by saying the line number, such as **LINE FOUR** or repeating one of the entries shown in the MMI display. You can also select a line through the MMI ▸

control panel by turning the control knob to an entry and pressing the knob.

You can scroll through the list displayed with the commands **NEXT PAGE/PREVIOUS PAGE** or **FIRST PAGE/LAST PAGE**.

Voice guidance

To switch voice guidance on or off during route guidance, say the command **VOICE GUIDANCE ON** or **VOICE GUIDANCE OFF**. Use the **COMPACT VOICE GUIDANCE** command to shorten the announcement.

Adjusting the volume

To adjust the voice recognition system volume with the multifunction steering wheel, turn the right thumbwheel (2) ⇨ *page 84, fig. 98* up or down while an announcement is playing.

You can also adjust the voice recognition system volume by pressing the **Sound** control button while in the radio/media menu ⇨ *page 26*.

Help commands

You can say a help command when the voice recognition system is switched on ⇨ *page 84*. Possible help commands are:

– **HELP**
– **HELP SPEECH DIALOGUE SYSTEM**
– **HELP DIRECTORY**
– **HELP TELEPHONE***
– **HELP NAVIGATION**
– **HELP MAP**

Say the command **BACK** to return to the main help menu.

System-guided help

If the voice recognition system is switched on ⇨ *page 84* but you do not give a command, the system gives the prompt **Please enter a command or say help**. If you still do not give a command, the voice recognition system offers possible commands.

Example of system-guided help (the telephone* function is activated):

Operation/ Commands	Voice recognition system announcement
Press Talk button briefly	Input signal: **Beep**
No command given	**Please enter a command or say help**
HELP	**Please choose one of the following topics. You can press the Talk button at any time to enter a command.**
	All telephone commands
	Important telephone commands
	Commands for phoning
	Commands for the call lists

Tips

– You can interrupt a voice recognition system announcement at any time by pressing the Talk button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 84, fig. 98* and enter a new command.
– You can also adjust the volume by the turning the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 25*.

Calling

Starting telephone mode

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The MMI telephone function must be active ⇨ *page 18* and the voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

▸ Say **TELEPHONE**. Telephone mode starts. The voice recognition system remains switched on for approximately five seconds to accept an additional command.

Dialing a phone number

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

▸ Say **DIAL NUMBER**. ▶

- ▸ Enter a group of numbers such as "**0-1-7-2-2**". The system repeats the block of numbers and displays them in the MMI.
- ▸ Say **DELETE** to delete the last block of numbers.
- ▸ Say **DIAL** to dial the number.

Tips

You can correct incorrect entries when entering a telephone number with the **CORRECTION** command.

Calling

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ To call the phone number stored in a directory entry, say **CALL (XY)**, for example **CALL "JOHN SMITH"**. The telephone number is dialed.

If several phone numbers are stored in an address card, you add the command **BUSINESS LAND LINE**, **BUSINESS MOBILE**, **PRIVATE LAND LINE** or **PRIVATE MOBILE**, for example **CALL JOHN SMITH PRIVATE MOBILE**.

Tips

When an address card is open, you can dial a phone number with the command **CALL PRIVATE** or **CALL BUSINESS** ⇨ *page 86*.

Additional telephone mode commands

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Accessing call lists

- ▸ Say **NUMBERS DIALED**, **RECEIVED CALLS** or **MISSED CALLS**. The call list is shown in the MMI display. You can dial a number by saying the line number.

Redialing

- ▸ Say **REDIAL**. The last number dialed is called.

Using addresses

Opening the directory

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **DIRECTORY**. The directory opens. The voice recognition system remains switched on for approximately five seconds to accept an additional command.

Using an entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Searching for/opening an entry

- ▸ Say **FIND ENTRY**.
- ▸ Say the name of the address card if prompted by the voice recognition system. The address card opens.

Calling up an entry

- ▸ To call the phone number stored in a directory entry, say **CALL (XY)**, for example **CALL "JOHN SMITH"** ⇨ *page 86*. The telephone number is dialed.

Navigating to an entry

- ▸ Say **NAVIGATE TO (XY)** such as **NAVIGATE TO "JOHN SMITH"**. If a navigation destination is assigned to an address card, that destination is entered and route guidance begins.

Tips

You can start route guidance when an address card is open with the commands **NAVIGATE TO PRIVATE ADDRESS** or **NAVIGATE TO BUSINESS ADDRESS**. You can also dial phone numbers with the commands **CALL PRIVATE** or **CALL BUSINESS**.

Storing a voice memo

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The MMI creates a name tag for each entry in the directory. You can also assign up to 50 personal name tags for address cards.

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *page 86* and the voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **STORE NAME**.
- ▸ Say the personal name tag.
- ▸ Repeat the personal name tag if prompted by the voice recognition system. The personal name tag is stored in the MMI.

Name tags can only be stored using the voice recognition system. The name tags **do not** change the data stored in the directory.

You must repeat the name tag with the same pronunciation and volume. Assign clear, distinct names as name tags.

Do not include any long pauses in name tags.

Reading name tags

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can have name tags read.

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *page 86* and the voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **READ NAME**. The personal name tag is read.

Tips

You can also listen to personal name tags for address cards through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 50*.

Deleting personal name tags

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Deleting in the address card

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete name tag** and press the knob while the address card is open ⇨ *page 86*. The personal name tag is deleted.

Deleting in the SETUP menu

- ▸ Press the NAME function button. A list of entries appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete voice memos** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete individually** or **Delete all entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to begin the deletion process.

Navigating

Starting navigation mode

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **NAVIGATION**. Navigation mode starts. The voice recognition system remains switched on for approximately five seconds to accept an additional command.

Entering a destination

The voice recognition system offers two ways to enter destinations: system-guided destination entry or entering individual commands.

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

System-guided destination entry

- ▸ Say **ENTER DESTINATION**. The input field appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69*.
- ▸ Say the desired city when prompted.
- ▸ Say the desired street when prompted.
- ▸ Say the desired house number when prompted, or
- ▸ Say **START ROUTE GUIDANCE** to navigate to the destination entered.

Entering individual commands

- ▸ To enter the country, say **ENTER COUNTRY** and say the country name.
- ▸ To enter the town, say **ENTER TOWN** and say the name of the town. ▶

- ▸ To enter the street, say **ENTER STREET** and say the complete name of the street, such as **NORTH FIFTH AVENUE**.
- ▸ To enter a street in the current town, say **ENTER STREET IN VICINITY** and say the complete name of the street, such as **NORTH FIFTH AVENUE**.
- ▸ To enter the house number, say **ENTER HOUSE NUMBER** and say the house number one digit at a time.
- ▸ Say **START ROUTE GUIDANCE** to navigate to the destination entered.

It may take a few seconds to search the location. The MMI display will then show a list of possible city names. You can select the desired location by saying the line number, such as **LINE FOUR** or turning and pressing the control knob. You can scroll through the list of location names with the commands **NEXT PAGE/PREVIOUS PAGE**. Because many countries have several cities with the same name, it may be necessary to select the city from a list again ⇨ *page 84*.

Tips

- – Once a city is entered into the input field, you can start route guidance to the city center by press the Talk button and saying **START ROUTE GUIDANCE**. You can also start route guidance through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 62*.
- – You can also switch the voice recognition system on and enter a command during active route guidance and messages about driving maneuvers.
- – For additional information on navigation functions, refer to ⇨ *page 60*.

Points of interest

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **ENTER SPECIAL DESTINATION**.
- ▸ After the announcement **Please enter the search area**, say **IN IMMEDIATE VICINITY**, **IN VICINITY OF DESTINATION**, **IN NEW TOWN** or **NATIONWIDE**. A list with point of interest categories appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select an entry from the list, say the line number, for example **LINE TWO** or say the name of the entry. The point of interest is set as the navigation destination.
- ▸ Say **START ROUTE GUIDANCE** to navigate to the destination entered.

The following top destinations can be set directly as navigation destinations:

- – **NEXT GAS STATION**
- – **NEXT DIESEL GAS STATION**
- – **NEXT PARKING LOT**
- – **NEXT RESTAURANT**
- – **NEXT ACCOMMODATION**
- – **NEXT HOSPITAL**
- – **NEXT AUDI DEALER**
- – **NEXT POLICE STATION**
- – **NEXT ATM**
- – **NEXT COFFEE SHOP**
- – **NEXT AIRPORT**
- – **NEXT TRAIN STATION**

Tips

You can scroll through the list displayed with the commands **NEXT PAGE/PREVIOUS PAGE** or **FIRST PAGE/LAST PAGE**.

Map options

You can use the voice recognition system to control many map view functions in the MMI display.

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Map option commands include:

General options

- – **MAP ON/OFF** - The map is displayed or hidden in the MMI display.
- – **DAY/NIGHT MAP** - The map background is light/dark ⇨ *page 71*.
- – **ADDITIONAL INFO ON/OFF** - Upcoming turns with calculated distance are displayed when route guidance is active. ▶

Map type

– **POSITION 2D /3D MAP** - The current vehicle position is shown in a two/three dimensional map ⇨ *page 71*.
– **DESTINATION MAP** - The map shows the destination ⇨ *page 71*.
– **DETAIL MAP** - The current vehicle position is shown in the map with 1 km scale. This function is only available through the voice recognition system.
– **OVERVIEW MAP** - The entire route from the starting point to the destination is shown on the map ⇨ *page 71*.

Orientation

– **ORIENTATION NORTH** - The map is oriented to the north ⇨ *page 71*.
– **ORIENTATION IN DIRECTION OF TRAVEL** - The map is oriented to the direction the vehicle is traveling ⇨ *page 71*.
– **ORIENTATION AUTOMATIC** - The map is oriented in the direction of travel at a scale less than 2.5. At a scale greater than 2.5 km, the map is oriented to the north ⇨ *page 71*.

Zoom

– **INTERSECTION ZOOM ON/OFF** - The map is displayed in zoom mode at intersections ⇨ *page 72*.
– **ZOOM OFF** - Switched the activated map zoom mode off.
– **MAP LARGER/SMALLER** - The map display is changed.
– **SCALE (XY)**, for example **SCALE 5 km** - The map scale is changed. Available scales are 50 m, 100 m, 200 m, 500 m, 1 km, 2 km, 5 km, 10 km, 20 km, 50 km, 100 km, 200 km and 500 km. Units of measure are kilometers/meters or miles/yards.

Additional navigation commands

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Route guidance

▸ Say **START/STOP ROUTE GUIDANCE**. Route guidance starts or stops.

Calling up navigation lists

▸ Say **LAST DESTINATIONS** or **TOP DESTINATIONS**. Follow the instructions from the voice recognition system.

Dynamic route guidance

▸ Say **DYNAMIC ROUTE GUIDANCE ON/OFF**. Dynamic route guidance is switched on or off.

Route criteria

▸ Say: **FAST ROUTE**, **ECONOMICAL ROUTE** or **SHORT ROUTE**. The route is calculated according to various criteria, or
▸ Say: **ROUTE LIST**. The route list can be viewed when route guidance is active.

Navigating to a directory entry

▸ Say **NAVIGATE TO (XY)** such as **NAVIGATE TO "JOHN SMITH"**. If a navigation destination is assigned to an address card, that destination is entered and route guidance begins.

Tips

To switch voice guidance on or off when route guidance is active, say the command **VOICE GUIDANCE ON** or **VOICE GUIDANCE OFF** ⇨ *page 84*.

A

AAC files 9, 10, 13
Accepting a call 58
Activate your Satellite Radio service 32
Addit. info
  MMI control panel 72
Addresses
  MMI control panel 44
  Voice recognition system 86
Adjusting volume
  MMI control panel 26
Alternative route
  on/off 70
  Selecting 65
AM 31
Answering/ignoring a call
  MMI control panel 55
  Multifunction steering wheel 79
Aspect ratio 42
Audi music interface
  Connecting the adapter cable 14
  Repeat 39
  Starting 14
Audi music interface adapter cable 14
Audio source 37
Automatic zoom
  Voice recognition system 88
Automatic zoom (Navigation) 72
Aux-in connection
  Connecting/removing an audio device . . 17
  MMI control panel 37
Avoiding a route 70

B

Balance (sound) 26
Band 32
Bass (sound) 26
Bluetooth
  Bluetooth name 57
  Cell phone prep 18
  Delete Bluetooth devices 57
  Discover Mode 57
  Find Bluetooth devices 57
  Paired devices 57
  Switching on/off 57
Brightness
  MMI display 29
Buttons
  MMI control panel 21
  Multifunction steering wheel 75

C

Calling
  MMI control panel 53, 54
  Multifunction steering wheel 77
  Voice recognition system 85, 86
Calling up navigation lists (voice recognition system) 89
Call lists 58
  Delete 57
  MMI control panel 54
  Multifunction steering wheel 78
  Voice recognition system 86
Call options 58
Calls
  MMI control panel 54
  Multifunction steering wheel 79
Call volume 58
Care
  CD/DVD 8
  Memory cards 9
  MMI control panel 6
Category filter (Satellite Radio) 35
CD
  Ejecting 11
  Ejecting (CD changer) 13
  Handling tips 8
  Loading 11
  Loading (CD changer) 12
  MMI control panel 37
  Multifunction steering wheel 76
  Repeat 39
CD/DVD drive 10
CD changer 11
Cell phone
  with hands-free profile 19
  with hands-free profile (cell phone prep) 18
Cell phone package
  Calling (multifunction steering wheel) . . 77
Cell phone prep
  Calling (MMI control panel) 53
  Calling (voice recognition system) 85

Pairing cell phone 19
Searching for Bluetooth devices 19
Starting 18
Chapter (drive)
Next/previous chapter 39
Cleaning
CD/DVD 8
Control button 21
Control knob 21
Controls
MMI control panel 21
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Overview 5

D

Data password 30
Date 27
Default settings
MMI control panel 29
Delete Bluetooth devices 57
Deleting local call lists 57
Deleting recent calls
MMI control panel 57
Demo mode 72
Dialed numbers
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 78
Dialing a phone number
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 79
Voice recognition system 85
Dialing phone numbers
MMI control panel 56
Dialing stored phone numbers 56
Directory
Multifunction steering wheel 78
Directory entries
Cell phone prep 20
Directory entry
calling up (MMI control panel) 47
Calling (voice recognition system) 86
Change 49
Deleting 50
Editing 48
Importing 46
Navigating (MMI control panel) 48
Navigating (voice recognition system) 86, 89
Search/open (voice recognition system) . 86
searching (MMI control panel) 47
Store new 44
Voice memo 87
Directory memory capacity 52
Discover Mode 57
Display
refer to Driver information system 75
refer to MMI Display 22
Displaying track information 42
Driver information system 75
Drives
Audi music interface 14
Aux-in connection 17
CD/DVD 10
CD changer 11
File formats 7
Jukebox 9
Memory card reader 13
MMI control panel 7
DSP 27
DSP Bang & Olufsen 27
DTMF tones
MMI control panel 54
DVD 10
Ejecting 11
Full screen display 40
Handling tips 8
Loading 11
Main menu 40
Multifunction steering wheel 76
Parental control 41
Dynamic Navigation
Voice recognition system 89
Dynamic route
MMI control panel 70

E

Editing (directory) 52
Edit (directory) 49, 50
Ending a call
MMI control panel 56
Multifunction steering wheel 79

Entering a destination 61
Address 62
Alternative route 65
Avoiding a route 70
from the map 62
Loading a destination from the directory 68
Loading a tour plan 69
Load last destination 64
Point of interest 63
Setting a starting point 72
Tips 61
Top destination 69
Voice recognition system 87
Entering a point of interest
MMI control panel 63
Voice recognition system 88
Entering destination
Tour plan 64
with stopover 64
Entering stopover 64
External
Audio devices 16
Bluetooth device 57

F

Fader (sound) 26
Fast forward in a track (drive) 38
File formats 7
Files
Erasing 10
Importing 9
FM 31
Folder
Repeat 39
Selecting (MMI control panel) 37
Selecting (multifunction steering wheel) 77
Folder structure 37
Frequency 33
Full screen (DVD) 40
Function button 21

G

GALA 27

H

HD Radio™ (digital radio)
HD station info 34
Turning on/off 34
HD Radio™ (Digitalradio)
Frequency band 31

I

Importing a phone number 45
In-car entertainment fader 30
Volume 26
INFO
MP3 CD/Audi music interface 39
Sirius track information 35
Traffic information 74
Information (Navigation) 71
In immediate vicinity (point of interest) . . 63
In new city (point of interest) 63
Input level 42
Intersection zoom
Voice recognition system 88
Invert call lists 58
In vicinity of destination (point of interest) 63
iPod 15
MMI control panel 37
Multifunction steering wheel 76

J

Joystick 24
Jukebox 9
Erasing files 10
Importing files 9

L

Laser devices 8
Last calls
Multifunction steering wheel 79
Last destinations
Delete 73
Load 64
Loading from the directory (navigation) . . 68

M

Main menu (DVD) 40

Making other calls
Multifunction steering wheel 79
Manual location entry 72
Map content
MMI control panel 69
Voice recognition system 88
Map display 66
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88
Map options
MMI control panel 69, 71, 72
Voice recognition system 88
Map orientation
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88
Map type
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88
Map zoom (voice recognition system) 88
Measurement units 29
Memory card
Handling tips 9
Inserting/removing 13
MMI control panel 37
Repeat 39
Memory card reader 13
Inserting/removing a memory card 13
Missed calls
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 78
MMI 5
Components 5
Restarting 28
Switching on/off 21
MMI control panel 21
MMI display
Brightness 29
Joystick 24
Navigation display 66
Speller 23
Switching on/off 25
MMI Display
Standard menus 22
Moving stored stations 34
MP3
MMI control panel 37
Multifunction steering wheel 76
MP3 files 9, 10, 11, 13
MP3 player 16
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Mute
MMI control panel 25
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Muting
MMI control panel 25

N

Names
Navigating to a directory entry 86
Name tags
Calling directory entry 86
deleting 87
Erasing 29
Reading 87
Nationwide (point of interest) 63
Navigating
MMI control panel 48, 60
Multifunction steering wheel 80
Voice recognition system 87
Navigation announcement
Volume 26
Navigation announcements 60
Repeating 80
Volume 26
Navigation announcement volume 26
Navigation destination
Store in the directory 48
Storing 67, 68
also refer to Entering a destination 61
Navigation display
Driver information system 67, 80
MMI display 66
Nav Info (Navigation) 71
Next station
Radio (MMI control panel) 33

O

Options 58
Multifunction steering wheel 80
Orientation (map)
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88

P

Paired devices 57
Parental control (DVD) 41
Pause (drive)
MMI control panel 42
Multifunction steering wheel 77
Pausing/continuing playback 42
Phone book
refer to Addresses 44
Phone number
importing into the directory 45
Storing in the directory 56
Presentation mode
Demo mode 72
Setting a starting point 72
Presets (radio)
Moving stations 34
Selecting a station (MMI control panel) . 33
Storing stations 34
Presets (Radio)
Deleting stations 36
Preset (radio)
Selecting a station (multifunction steering wheel) 76

Q

Quartz clock 27

R

Radio
Category filter (Satellite Radio) 35
MMI control panel 31
Multifunction steering wheel 76
Station info (Satellite Radio) 35
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Radio clock 27
Radio station on the MMI control panel
Frequency 33
Next station 33
Seek 33
Selecting from the preset list 33
Storing 34
Radio station on the multifunction steering wheel
Selecting from preset list 76
Selecting from station list 76
Radio stations on the MMI control panel
Moving 34
Selecting from the station list 33
Radio text 35
Read error messages (CD/DVD) 8
Received calls
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 78
Receiver serial number 32
Recent calls
MMI control panel 54
Redial 58
Voice recognition system 86
Repeat 39
Repeating a command 29
Repeat options 39
Replacing a call 58
Multifunction steering wheel 80
Reset 28
Restart (MMI) 28
Rewind in a track (drive) 38
Ring tone volume 26, 58
Route criteria
MMI control panel 70
Voice recognition system 89
Route guidance
Changing 61
in the driver information system 67
In the MMI display 66
Stopping 66
Route list 70
Route options
MMI control panel 70
Voice recognition system 89
Route plan
refer to Tour plan 64, 68, 69

S

Safety 6
when calling 53
when navigating 60

Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service
Activate your Satellite Radio service 32
Category filter 35
Station info 35
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Satellite radio 31
Scrolling text 34
SD
Multifunction steering wheel 76
SDARS
refer to Selecting frequency band 31
Seek (radio) 33
Selecting frequency band
MMI control panel 32
Selecting source
Audi music interface 37
Aux-in 37
CD/DVD 37
CD changer 37
Jukebox 37
Memory card 37
Selecting the frequency band
Multifunction steering wheel 76
Selecting the language
MMI control panel 28
Selecting the menu language
MMI control panel 28
Set from last destinations 48
Setting a starting point 72
Setting the volume
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Setup radio
Category filter (Satellite Radio) 35
Station info (Satellite Radio) 35
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Show the next report 74
Shuffle 40
Sirius 31
Software version
MMI control panel 29
Navigation 29
Song information (Sirius INFO) 35
Sound
Basic settings 26
DSP 27
DSP Bang & Olufsen 27
Volume 26
Sound Focus 27
Speller 23
Spoken cues
On/Off (phone) 72
Volume 72
Start/stop route guidance (voice recognition system) 89
Starting
Cell phone prep 18
Starting navigation mode
Voice recognition system 87
Starting Navigation mode
MMI control panel 61
Starting radio mode 32
Starting telephone mode
Voice recognition system 85
Starting Telephone mode
MMI control panel 53
Station info (Satellite Radio) 35
Station list (radio)
Selecting a station (multifunction steering wheel) 76
Selecting station list (MMI control panel) 33
Update 33
Station name (radio) 34
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Stereo jack 16
Store current position 70
Storing a destination
in the directory 67
Subwoofer (sound) 26
Surround Level 27
Switching on/off
MMI control panel 21
Voice recognition system 84
Switching the microphone on/off 58

T

Talk button (multifunction steering wheel) 81, 84
Telephone settings 58
TEXT (radio) 35
Time 27

Tips
Caring for your MMI control panel 6
Handling CDs/DVDs 8
Handling memory cards 9
Traffic safety 6
TMC 74
Top destination 67, 69
Top destinations 48
Tour plan
Deleting 70
Entering 64
Entering stopover 64
Loading 69
Storing 68
Track
Repeat 39
Selecting (MMI control panel) 38
Selecting (multifunction steering wheel) 77
Track display 42
Track information 39
Track (drive)
Fast forward/rewind 38
Next/previous track 39
Traffic information 74
Traffic reports 74
display in the map 69
Traffic safety 6
Treble (sound) 26

U

Units 29
USB
MMI control panel 37
Multifunction steering wheel 76
USB storage device 16

V

Version
MMI software 29
Navigation software 29
Video source 37
VNC 27
Voice guidance
Off/Complete/Compact 72
Voicemail number 59
Voice memos
Storing 87
Voice recognition system 83
Adjusting volume 84
Command types 84
Deleting a name tag 50
Help 84
Reading a name 50
Repeating a command 29
Selecting an entry from the list 84
Storing a voice memo 87
Switching on/off 81
Volume 26
Volume
during a navigation announcement 26
Telephone 26
Voice recognition system 26, 84
Volume balancing 27

W

WMA files 9, 10, 11, 13

© 2010 AUDI AG

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. Text, illustrations and specifications in this book are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG. Subject to alteration or amendment. Printed in Germany.

Editorial deadline: 09/17/2010

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

MMI Navigation plus
Operating Instructions
Englisch Nordamerika 11.2010
112.562.860.21

www.audi.com



MMI Navigation plus

Operating Instructions

Audi

Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

You have decided on the MMI Navigation plus - thank you very much for your confidence in us.

With your new Audi, you are receiving a vehicle with a state-of-the art system that allows you the change the vehicle's settings and operate the electronic equipment using a Multi Media Interface called the *MMI*.

We recommend that you read these Operating Instructions carefully so that you quickly get to know all of the functions and possibilities that the MMI offers and are able to make full use of them while driving.

Please note that these operating instructions are a supplement to your vehicle Owner's Manual and should only be used in conjunction with your current vehicle Owner's Manual.

Should you have any further questions about the MMI in your vehicle, please ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi.

AUDI AG

About this book 4

MMI components 5
Overview 5
Controls at a glance 5
MMI: Multi Media Interface 5
Traffic safety tips 6
Tips on caring for the MMI 6

Drives 7
Introduction 7
Overview of drives 7
CD/DVD mode general information . . 8
Memory card general information . . . 9
Jukebox 9
CD/DVD drive 10
CD changer 11
Memory card reader 13
Audi music interface 14
Aux-in connection 17

Cell phone prep 18
Introduction 18
Starting 18

MMI control panel 21
General operation 21
Switching on/off 21
Operating the system 21
MMI Display 22
Adjusting the volume 25
Adjusting the sound 26
Setting the time 27
Restarting the MMI (Reset) 28
Additional settings 28

Listening to the radio 31
Introduction 31
Starting radio mode 32
Activating your Satellite Radio service 32
Selecting frequency band 32
Selecting a station from the station/ preset list 33
Selecting the station 33
Storing stations 34
Moving stored stations 34
Additional settings 34

Playing media 37
Introduction 37
Starting Media mode 37
Selecting source 37
Selecting a folder 37
Selecting a track 38
Fast forward/rewind 38
Next/previous track or chapter 39
Track information 39
Repeat options 39
Shuffle 40
DVD main menu 40
DVD full screen display 40
DVD parental control 41
Pausing/continuing playback 42
Additional settings 42

Directory 44
Introduction 44
Opening the directory 44
Storing a new directory entry 44
Importing directory entries 45
Exporting address cards 46
Using a directory entry 47
Editing a directory entry 48
Managing profiles 50
Additional settings 52

Calling 53
Introduction 53
Starting Telephone mode 53
Dialing a telephone number 54
Answering/ignoring a call 55
Ending a call 56
Storing a phone number in the directory 56
Dialing stored phone numbers 56
Deleting local call lists 57
Bluetooth settings 57
Additional settings 58

Navigating 60
Introduction 60
Starting Navigation mode 61
Entering a destination 61
Stopping route guidance 66
Display 66
Storing a destination 67

Loading a destination 68
Additional settings 69

Calling up traffic information 74
Introduction 74
Calling up TMC traffic reports 74

Multifunction steering wheel . 75
General operation 75
Introduction 75
Adjusting the volume 75
Listening to the radio 76
Playing media 76
Calling 77
Navigating 80
Name tag 81

Voice recognition system 83
Voice recognition system 83
Introduction 82
General operation 84
Calling 85
Using addresses 86
Navigating 87

Index 90

This book contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this book in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This book describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of the editorial deadline. Individual items of equipment may not yet be available at the time of printing or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this book do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with telephone”. Optional equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as schematic images. Some of the details on your vehicle may look slightly different than illustrated.

There is a **Table of Contents** at the beginning of this book that lists all of the topics covered in this book in the order that they appear. There is also an alphabetically arranged **Index** at the end of this book.

All **directions** such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear” are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional equipment.

▶ The section continues on the next page.

® Registered trademarks are identified with ®. The absence of this symbol does not warrant unrestricted use of a term.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about avoiding damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Overview

Controls at a glance

The various MMI controls are located centrally in the cockpit and are easy to reach.

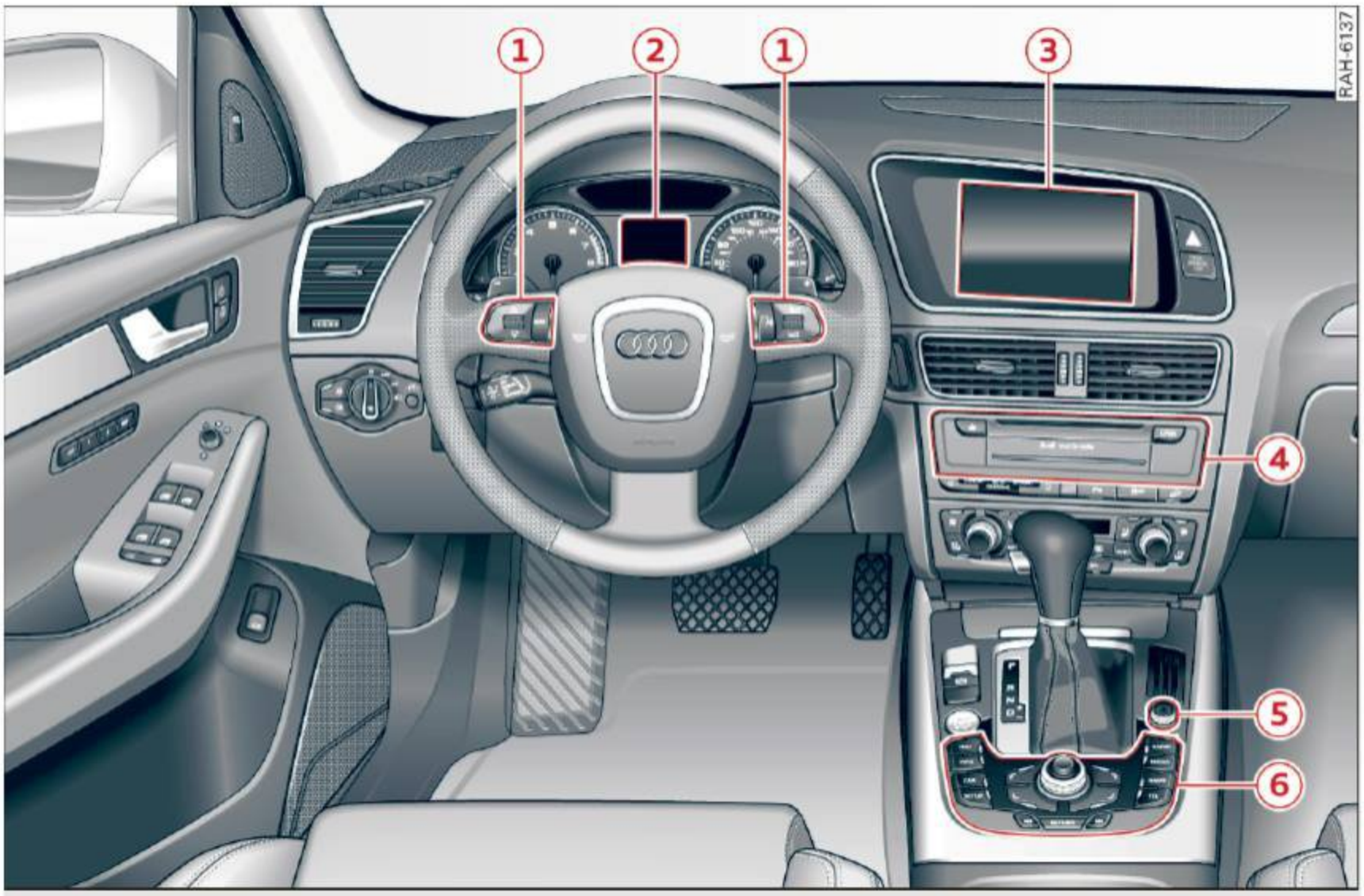


Fig. 1 MMI controls

① Multifunction steering wheel . . 75
② Driver information system 75
③ MMI Display 22
④ MMI drives 7
⑤ On/Off knob 21
⑥ MMI control panel 21

Tips

– Please note that this manual only describes MMI components. You can find additional information on operating your vehicle in your vehicle Owner's Manual.

MMI: Multi Media Interface

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various communication and entertainment systems in your Audi.

Through the MMI, you can listen to the radio and CDs and connect portable audio devices*. The MMI also has two memory card readers and an internal hard drive where you can store your favorite music. The navigation system can guide you to your destination using the shortest route, or you can add up to three stopovers. Or you can follow your own tour plan with up to nine intermediate destinations. Information about traffic conditions is taken into account during route guidance. You can also use many of the functions on your cell phone. The MMI also combines many driver assistance systems in your vehicle. ▶

There are several ways you can access the wide range of MMI functions in your vehicle. You can access all of the functions through the MMI control panel with its intuitive controls. You can also comfortably access the MMI functions that you use most frequently through the multifunction steering wheel or voice recognition system.

Traffic safety tips

Audi recommends only performing important functions such as entering a navigation destination when the vehicle is stationary. Always remember to stop using the MMI if necessary to ensure your safety and the safety of other drivers.

WARNING

- Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the MMI system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.
- Adjust the volume of the audio system so signals from outside the vehicle such as police and fire sirens can be heard easily at all times.
- Obey all applicable laws regarding use of telephones in vehicles.

Tips on caring for the MMI

The *Cleaning and Protection* chapter in your vehicle owner's manual provides instructions on caring for and cleaning the MMI components.

Drives

Introduction

The MMI is equipped with a CD/DVD drive, a CD changer*, two memory card readers and a Jukebox. You can also connect a portable audio device (such as an iPod or USB storage device) to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI control panel.

Overview of drives

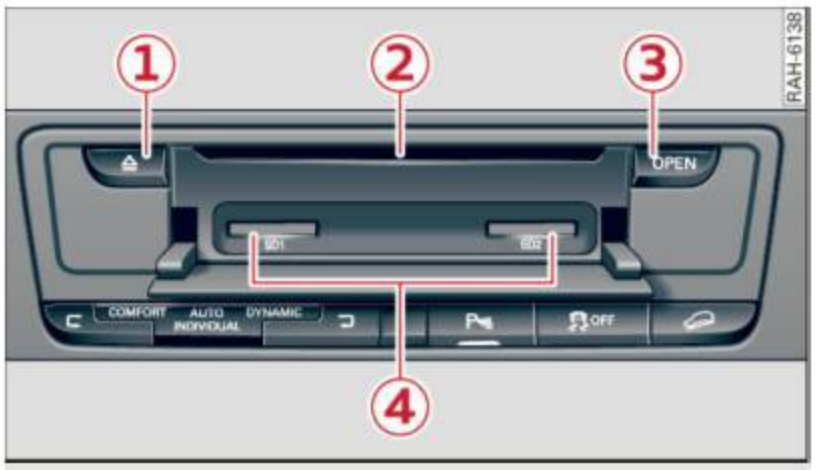


Fig. 2 MMI drives

① Eject button
② CD/DVD slot
③ OPEN button
④ Memory card reader

The MMI drives are located in the center console and are started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*. Opening the card reader cover with the OPEN button ③ ⇨ *fig. 2* provides access to both memory card readers.

The CD/DVD drive, Jukebox, memory card reader and USB storage device connection* support the following audio file properties:

	MP3 Files	WMA files	AAC files
Format	MPEG-1 Layer 3 MPEG-2 Layer 3	Version 7, 8 and 9	MPEG-4
Profile			LC - Low Complexity
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a
File system	Memory card and USB storage device: FAT or FAT32 method, only one partition CD/DVD drive: Joliet (CDs single session and multisession; DVDs only single session)		
Standard	ISO 9660-Level 1 and 2		
Bit rates	32 to 320 kb/s and variable bit rates in sampling frequencies from 8 to 48 kHz		
Playlist format	M3U and PLS		
Number of files	CD/DVD drive: max. 1000 files per medium and directory Jukebox: max. 3000 files total USB storage device and memory card: max. 4000 files total and max. 1000 files per directory		
Supported media	Memory card reader: Memory cards with a capacity up to 32 GB CD/DVD drive: Audio CDs, MP3/WMA/AAC CDs with a capacity up to 700 MB MP3/WMA/AAC DVDs in DVD-5, -9, -10, -14 and -18 formats, Standard DVD-V and DVD-V compatible DVD-A Audi music interface: iPod ⇨ *page 15*, USB storage device ⇨ *page 16*		
Metadata	ID3 tag up to 50 characters	WMA tag up to 50 characters	Metadata support

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Tips

- The Jukebox does not support playlists.
- The more files/folders/playlists there are on a medium, the longer it will take to load the audio files. Audi recommends using storage mediums that only contain audio files.
- To decrease the time it takes to load audio files, create subfolders (for example according to artist or album).
- To access audio files as quickly as possible, Audi recommends using SD cards that are class 4 or higher.
- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kb/s.
- When playing MP3 files with a variable bit rate, there may be a discrepancy between the play time displayed and real time.
- The MMI drives do not support files protected by DRM.
- The functionality of individual storage mediums may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities.
- Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection or CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard may not play or playback may be limited. CDs that conform to the standard have the logo “Compact Disc Digital Audio” on the CD.
- Multisession CDs may not play or playback may be limited. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs.
- Specific characters (such a those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the MMI system language and cannot always be guaranteed.
- Never store important data on the memory cards, Jukebox, CDs/DVDs or portable audio devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files.
- Please note that audio files are subject to copyright laws.

CD/DVD mode general information

This general information applies to CDs and DVDs.

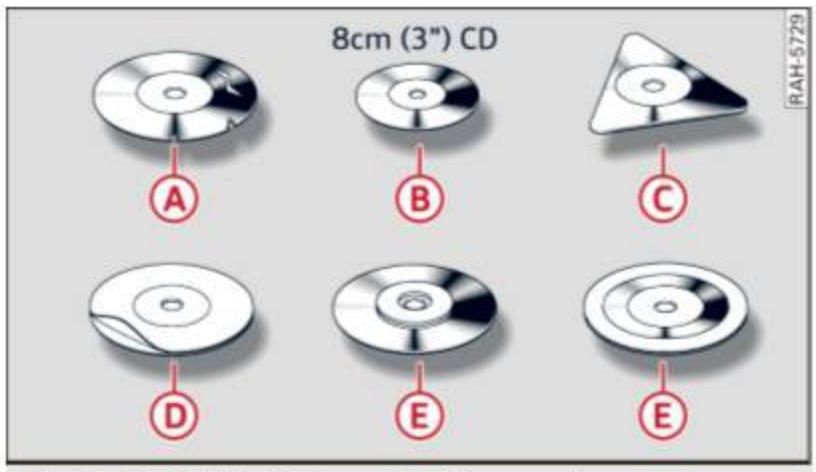


Fig. 3 CDs/DVDs that must not be used

Requirements for good sound quality

To ensure good, high-quality sound reproduction and to prevent damage to the drives or disc reading errors, please observe the following:

Ⓐ do not use damaged, dirty or scratched CDs.

Ⓑ do not use single CDs/DVDs (3 inch/8 cm).

Ⓒ do not use CDs/DVDs that are not round (Shape CDs/DVDs).

Ⓓ do not apply any labels on the CDs/DVDs.

Ⓔ do not use any protective rings.

Do not use protective CD/DVD film or stabilizer.

Cleaning drives, CDs and DVDs

Clean CDs/DVDs with a soft, lint-free cloth. Wipe the CD/DVD in a straight line from the center toward the outer edge. Dirty areas can be cleaned with a commercial CD cleaner or isopropyl alcohol. Never use gasoline, paint thinner, or record cleaner since they can damage CDs/DVDs.

Using laser equipment

Laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/ ▶

VDE 0837. The various types of audio equipment installed conform to safety class 1. The laser uses so little power or is shielded so there is no danger when it is used correctly.

Note

Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

- Always keep CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight.
- CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.
- Do not remove the cover from the device. The device does not contain any parts that the owner can repair.

Memory card general information

Both SD and MMC memory cards can be used.

The memory card reader has been tested with many of the products available on the market. However, in isolated cases it is possible that individual memory cards may not be recognized.

Always keep the memory card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles and other damage.

Note

Only use one-piece memory cards. If adapter cards (memory cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive.

Jukebox

Introduction

The MMI is equipped with a Jukebox that has 10 GB of memory available for audio files. Jukebox mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

Tips

- Please note that music files are subject to copyright law. Reset the Jukebox to the original default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.
- When the vehicle is at an altitude above approximately 3000 meters, the MMI hard drive shuts down temporarily to protect it. Navigation mode and the Jukebox are not available when that happens. All of the MMI functions will be available again as usual once you start the engine again at a location below 3000 meters.

Importing files

Audio files on a CD/DVD ROM in the CD/DVD drive, a USB storage device or a memory card can be imported.*



Fig. 4 Importing files

- ▸ Press the MEDIA function button.
- ▸ Press the **Import** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a source (such as **SD/MMC**, **CD/DVD** or **USB**) and press the knob. After checking the selected source, the MMI display shows a file structure. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **All files/folders** or select individual files for import and press the control knob.
- ▸ To start the import, turn the control knob in the top directory level to **Start import**. The progress of the import is shown in the MMI display.

You can select all of the files in a folder for import by turning the control knob to select the folder and then press and hold the knob.

The Jukebox automatically sorts music files during import into artist, album, title and genre folders using the stored metadata (such as ID3 tags).

If the Jukebox does not contain any files, a message appears in the MMI display with the option **Import new tracks**. Press the control knob to enter the import menu.

You can stop the import at any time by selecting **Cancel** with the control knob and pressing it. The import will also be cancelled if you switch off the MMI, remove the source (such as **SD/MMC**, **CD/DVD** or **USB**) or start the engine during the import. Tracks that have already been imported remain stored in the Jukebox.

Tips

- – Only import audio files when the engine is running.
- – Playing and importing audio files in the CD/DVD drive at the same time can lead to limitations in playback or importing. Audi recommends playing audio files in the CD/DVD drive once the import is completed successfully.
- – Importing from a CDDA (Compact Disc Digital Audio or typical store bought CD) Compact disc or DVD-A DVD Disc to the Jukebox is not supported.
- – Importing music files directly from an iPod to the Jukebox is not supported.
- – The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
- – Files that are already present are automatically overwritten when importing.
- – Files/tracks without stored metadata are listed as **unknown**. Audi recommends importing audio files with their accompanying metadata (such as ID3 tags).

Erasing files

Requirement: The media mode must be activated ⇨ *page 37* and the Jukebox must contain audio files.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete jukebox** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **All files/folders** or select individual files or folders for import and press the control knob.
- ▸ To erase selected files/folders, turn the control knob in the top directory level to **Start deletion** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob. The progress of the deletion is shown in the MMI display.

You can select all of the files in a folder for deletion by turning the control knob to select the folder and then press and hold the knob. Jukebox playback stops during the deletion process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Tips

If functionality is restricted, reset the Jukebox to the default settings ⇨ *page 29*.

CD/DVD drive

Introduction

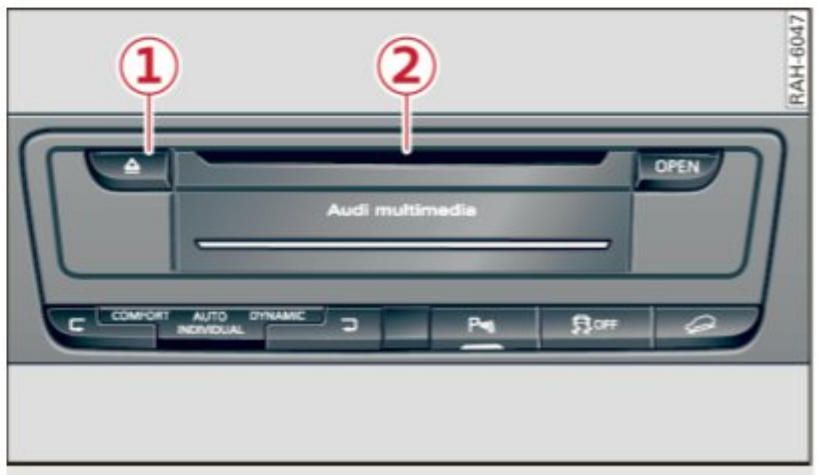


Fig. 5 CD/DVD drive

① Eject button
② CD/DVD slot

The CD/DVD drive is located in the center console. Audio CDs, CDs/DVDs with audio files and video DVDs can be loaded in the CD/DVD drive. CD/DVD mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

Loading a CD/DVD

Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.

- Make sure there is no CD/DVD in the drive ② ⇨ *page 10, fig. 5*.
- Slide the CD/DVD with the writing facing up straight into the drive ②.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

- Press the eject button ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 5*. The CD/DVD is ejected.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within 12 seconds of ejecting it.

CD changer

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with CD changer

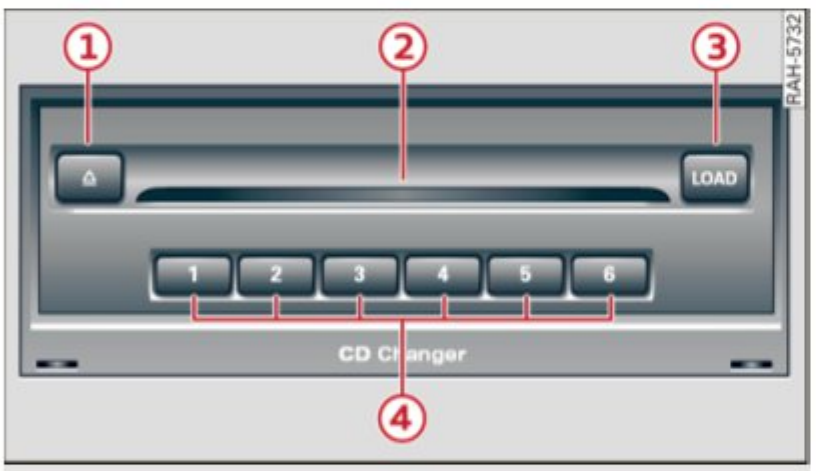


Fig. 6 CD changer

① Eject button
② CD slot
③ LOAD button
④ Position buttons with LEDs

The CD changer is located in the glove compartment. Audio CDs or MP3/WMA CDs can be loaded into the CD changer. CD mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

The CD changer supports the following file formats:

	MP3 Files	WMA files
Format	MPEG-1 Layer 3 MPEG-2 Layer 3	Version 7, 8 and 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma
Standard	ISO 9660-Level 1 and 2	
File system	Joliet (single session and multisession), UDF	
Number of files/ directories	Max. 255 files per directory, max. 255 directories, total of no more than 512 files and directories per medium	
Bit rates	32 to 320 kb/s and variable bit rate and variable bits in sampling frequencies from 8 to 48 kHz	

	MP3 Files	WMA files
Supported media	Audio CDs and MP3/WMA CDs with a capacity of 700 MB	
Metadata	ID3 tag up to 30 characters	WMA tag up to 30 characters

Tips

– Please follow the instructions for handling CDs ⇨ *page 8*.
– The CD changer does not support playlists and files with DRM protection.
– The functionality of individual storage mediums may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs available and the various capacities.
– Audio CDs with copy protection or CDs that do not conform to the standard for audio CDs may not play or playback may be limited. CDs that conform to the standard have the logo “Compact Disc Digital Audio” on the CD.
– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kb/s.
– When playing MP3 files with a variable bit rate, there may be a discrepancy between the play time displayed and real time.
– Multisession CDs may not play or playback may be limited. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs.
– Specific characters (such a those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.
– Please note that audio files are subject to copyright laws.

Loading a CD

Applies to vehicles: with CD changer

Six CDs can be loaded in the CD changer.

Loading a CD

▸ Press the LOAD button ③ ⇨ *page 11, fig. 6*. The LEDs at the side of the CD slot ② blink green when the CD changer is ready to be loaded.
▸ Slide the CD straight into the slot ② with the label facing up. The CD is automatically loaded in the next empty position in the CD changer. The LED in the corresponding button ④ illuminates.

Loading multiple CDs at the same time

▸ Press and hold the LOAD button ③ for more than two seconds.
▸ Wait until the green LEDs at the side of the CD slot ② begin blinking.
▸ Slide the CDs one at a time straight into the slot ② with the label facing up. The CDs are loaded automatically in the next empty position in the CD changer.
▸ Press the LOAD button to interrupt the loading process.

Loading the CD in a specific empty position

▸ Press the LOAD button ③. The LED for the next empty position ④ blinks.
▸ Press the button.
▸ Wait until the green LEDs at the side of the CD slot ② begin blinking.
▸ Slide the CD straight into the slot ② with the label facing up.

Loading a CD into a specific occupied position

▸ Press the LOAD button ③. The LED next the occupied position stays on.
▸ Press the button. The corresponding CD is ejected.
▸ Remove the CD from the CD slot ②.
▸ Slide the CD you would like to load straight into the CD slot ② with the label facing up.

If you press the LOAD button ③ a second time while all CDs are being loaded, the loading procedure stops. ▶

Tips

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– You cannot load the CD changer if the LED next to the CD slot is red.

Ejecting a CD

Applies to vehicles: with CD changer

Ejecting a CD

▸ Press the eject button ① twice to eject the current CD ⇨ *page 11, fig. 6*.
▸ To eject any of the CDs, press the eject button ① and then one of the blinking buttons ④.

Ejecting all CDs

▸ Press and hold the eject button ① for more than two seconds. All the CDs are ejected one at a time.

The CD is pulled back into the CD changer automatically if you do not remove it from the CD slot within 30 seconds after ejecting it.

Memory card reader

Introduction

The MMI is equipped with two memory card readers ⇨ *page 7, fig. 2*. SC/MMC memory cards can be loaded in the memory card reader.

Memory card mode is started and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 37*.

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Tips

Please follow the instructions for handling memory cards ⇨ *page 9*.

Inserting a memory card

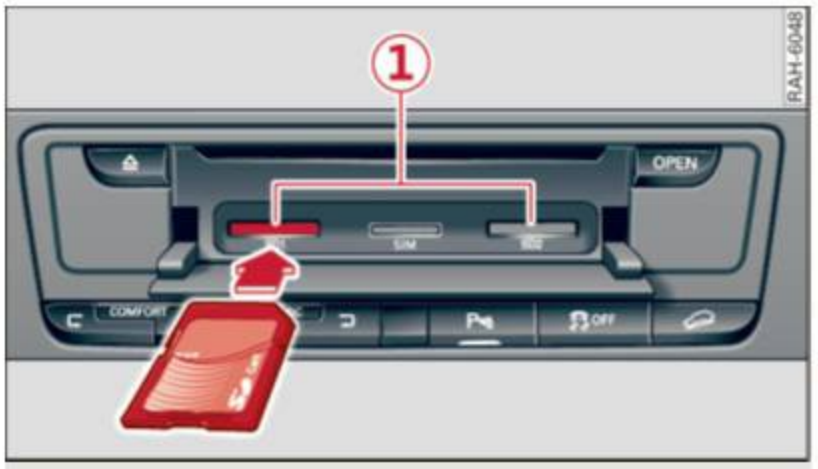


Fig. 7 Inserting a memory card

▸ Press the OPEN button. The card reader cover opens.
▸ Slide the memory card in the card reader slot with the label side up (contact surface down) ① ⇨ *fig. 7*. The angled corner of the memory card must point toward the right front.
▸ Then push the memory card into the slot until it clicks into place.

WARNING

The card reader must always be closed while driving for safety reasons.

Removing a memory card

▸ Press on the memory card briefly. The card is released from the slot.
▸ Remove the memory card.

Audi music interface

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface

Various portable audio devices can be connected to the Audi music interface.

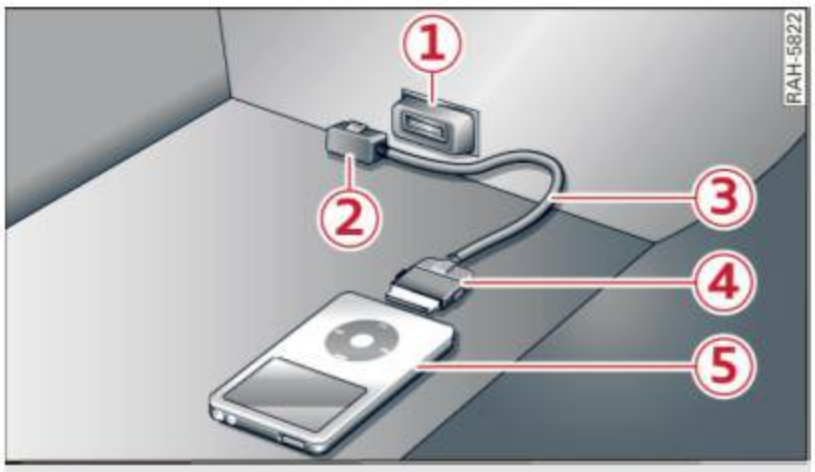


Fig. 8 Audi music interface with iPod adapter cable and iPod

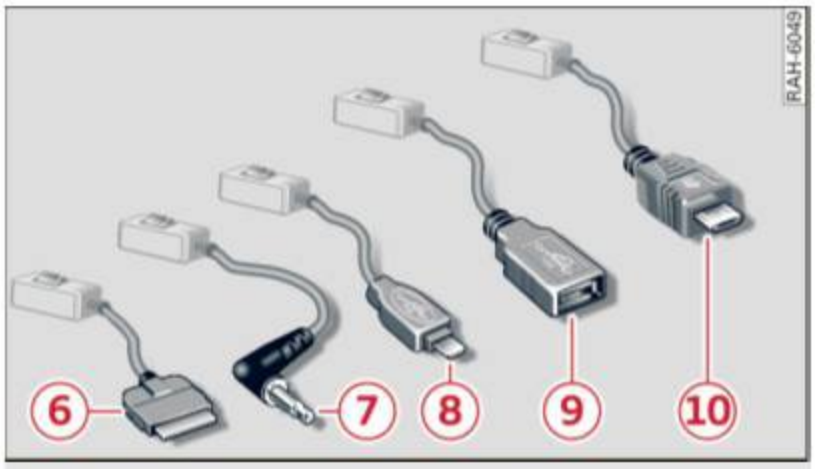


Fig. 9 Audi music interface: Adapter cable

① Interface on Audi music interface
② Jack for connecting to the Audi music interface
③ Adapter cable* (such as iPod adapter cable*)
④ iPod jack on iPod adapter cable*
⑤ iPod
⑥ iPod adapter cable*
⑦ 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable*
⑧ Mini USB adapter cable*
⑨ USB adapter cable*
⑩ Micro USB adapter cable*

The Audi music interface is located in the glove compartment. The Audi music interface is started and operated using the MEDIA function button ⇨ *page 37*.

You can connect a portable audio device such as an MP3 player to the Audi music interface using a special adapter cable*. You can purchase adapter cables* from your authorized Audi dealer or an electronics store.

Note

– Extremely high or low temperatures which can occur inside vehicles can damage portable audio devices or affect their performance. Never leave a portable audio device in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.
– Handle the adapter cable carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Tips

For up-to-date information on the Audi music interface, visit www.audiusa.com/mp3 (www.audicanada.ca/mp3).

Connecting the adapter cable to the Audi music interface

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and adapter cable

▸ Open the glove compartment.
▸ Connect the adapter cable to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 14, fig. 8*.
▸ Then connect the portable audio device to the Audi music interface.

Disconnecting the adapter cable from the Audi music interface

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and adapter cable

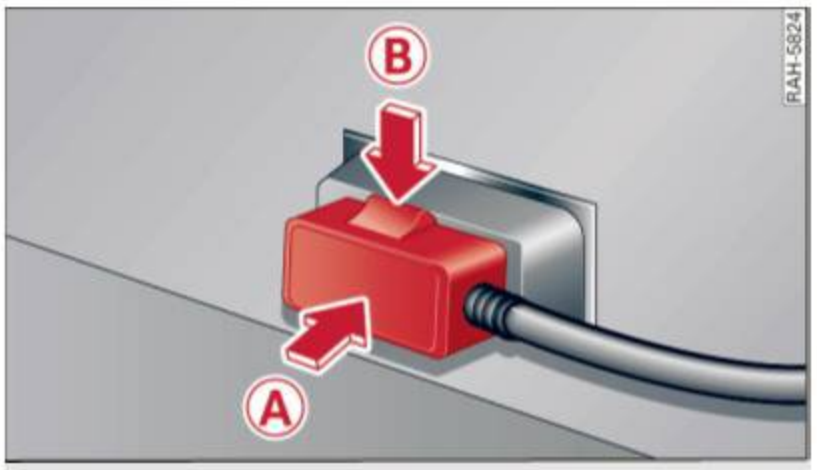


Fig. 10 Adapter cable: releasing the jack on the Audi music interface

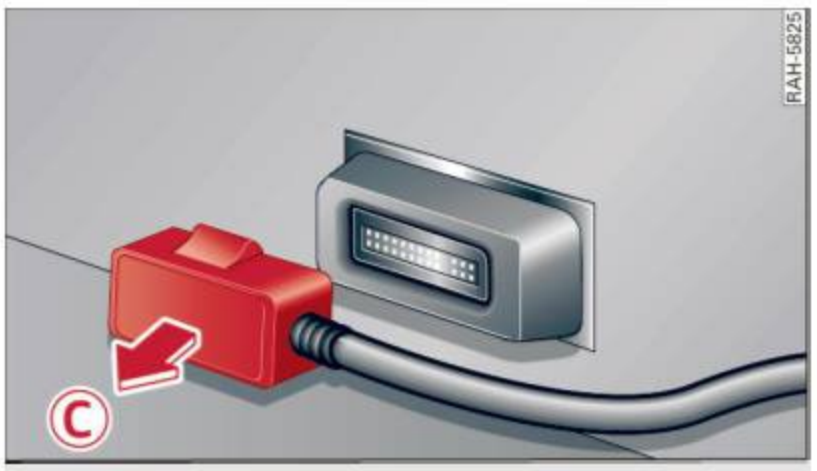


Fig. 11 Adapter cable: removing the released jack from the Audi music interface

Requirement: The glove compartment must be open.

- ▸ Press the jack Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 10* into the Audi music interface* while pressing the release catch Ⓑ on the jack down. The jack is released.
- ▸ Hold the release catch down while pulling the jack out of the Audi music interface Ⓒ ⇨ *fig. 11*.

Note

Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.

Connecting an iPod using the iPod adapter cable

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and iPod adapter cable

The iPod is connected to the Audi music interface with the iPod adapter cable.

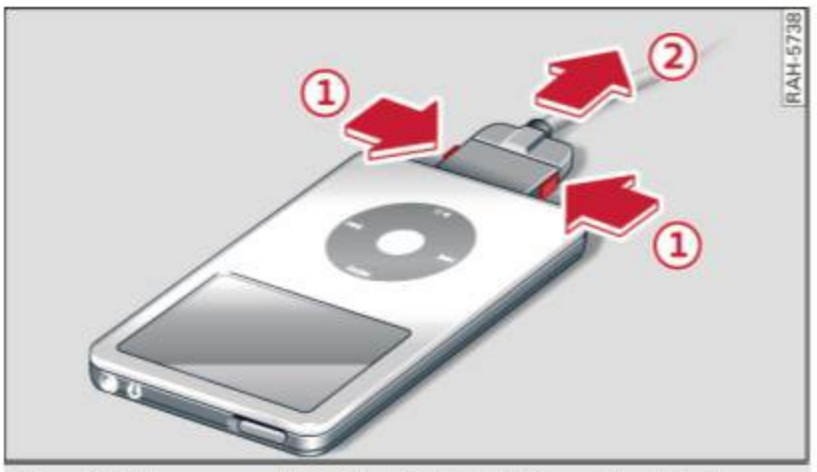


Fig. 12 Disconnecting the iPod jack from the iPod

Connecting the iPod jack

- ▸ Connect the iPod adapter cable* to the iPod.

Disconnecting the iPod jack

- ▸ Press the buttons ① to release the catch ⇨ *fig. 12*.
- ▸ Carefully pull the jack out of the iPod ②.

When the vehicle ignition is on, the iPod battery charges through the iPod adapter cable* once the iPod is connected to the Audi music interface.

The following iPods can be connected to the iPod adapter cable*:

– iPod mini - (version 1.3.0 and higher)
– iPod nano
– iPod 4G - fourth generation (version 1.2.1 and higher)
– iPod 5G - fifth generation Video
– iPod 6G - sixth generation classic
– iPod touch
– iPhone

Other iPod versions (such as the iPod shuffle) cannot be connected with the iPod adapter cable*. These can be connected as portable audio devices with the optional 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable* ⇨ *page 16*. ▶

Connect the adapter cable to the Audi music interface first and then connect the portable audio device to the Audi music interface.

The MMI does not support the following iPod functions:

– Rating music tracks
– Skipping to a certain place in a track
– Adding tracks to the “On-the-go” playlist
– Displaying the “Compilations” folder. Also, tracks marked with “Part of a Compilation” are not entered into the artist list if the compilation was activated in the iPod.
– Marking viewed/new Podcasts

Tips

– Only use the adapter cable with the number 4F0 051 510 K to connect an iPod.
– Problems with the iPod can affect operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod if this is the case (refer to the iPod instruction manual).
– For additional information on operating the iPod through the MMI, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.
– Refer to the iPod instruction manual for important information on operating your iPod.
– Audi recommends updating the iPod software to the latest version.

Connecting a portable audio device with the USB/Mini/Micro USB adapter cable

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and USB/Mini/Micro USB adapter cable

You can connect various USB storage devices to the Audi music interface with a USB/Mini/Micro USB adapter cable.

The Audi music interface supports USB storage devices from “USB Device Subclasses 1 and 6”. The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its “USB Device Subclass”.

The following USB storage devices are supported:

– USB sticks
– USB MP3 players that do not require any special driver software
– External USB flash memory
– External USB hard disks (HDD) - 1", 1.8", 2.5" - drives with an operating/continuous current of 500 mA maximum

For information on the properties of supported file formats, refer to ⇨ *page 7*.

For instruction on operating the USB storage device through the MMI, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.

Tips

– MTP players and USB hubs are not supported.
– Do not use USB extension cables or adapters. They may affect the functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for portable audio devices that do not meet the USB 2.0 specification.
– The USB storage device connection was tested with a variety of products on the market. However, it is possible that some memory cards may not be recognized.
– An iPod cannot be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter cable*. An iPod adapter cable* ⇨ *page 14* must be used.

Connecting a portable audio device with the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface and 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable

You can connect portable audio devices (such as MP3 players) to the Audi music interface with the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable.

▸ Insert the 3.5 mm stereo jack in the headphone socket on the portable audio device. Audio playback takes place through the vehicle sound system.

If the external audio input or Audi music interface is already selected as the **Source** ⇨ *page 37, fig. 35*, you may hear static when connecting or disconnecting the 3.5 ▶

mm stereo jack or the audio device connected to the stereo jack. To avoid this static, either mute the portable audio device ⇨ *page 25* or switch to another audio source (such as radio ⇨ *page 32* or CD) before connecting or disconnecting the device.

Tips

We recommend adjusting the volume of the portable audio device to approximately 70 percent of the maximum output. The volume can be adjusted (for example, at the radio volume) ⇨ *page 42*.

Aux-in connection

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Aux-in connection

A portable audio device is connected to the Aux-in connection with a 3.5 mm stereo jack.

The Aux-in connector is located in the center armrest. It is compatible with portable audio devices with a 3.5 mm stereo jack. Correct function of all portable audio devices cannot be guaranteed.

Note

Extremely high or low temperatures which can occur inside vehicles can damage portable audio devices or affect their performance. Never leave a portable audio device in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

For information on operating the audio device, see the manufacturer's instructions.

Connecting or removing an audio device

Applies to vehicles: with Aux-in connection

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- ▸ Connect the audio device with a 3.5 mm stereo jack* and insert the extension cable in the Aux-in connection.
- ▸ Press the MEDIA function button.
- ▸ Press the **Source** control button.
- ▸ Turn the knob to **external audio input** press it ⇨ *page 37*. **External audio source active** will appear in the MMI display when the device is recognized successfully.

Static can occur when connecting or disconnecting the 3.5 mm stereo jack. To avoid this static, either mute the portable audio device or switch to another audio source (such as radio or CD) before connecting or disconnecting the device.

You select audio files using the controls on the audio device. You can adjust the volume using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 25*, the **input level** function ⇨ *page 42*, the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 75* or directly on the audio device.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate a portable audio device while driving because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

- We recommend adjusting the volume of the portable audio device to approximately 70 percent of the maximum output.
- The vehicle battery discharges when the engine is stopped and the audio device is switched on.

Cell phone prep

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

A cell phone is paired with the cell phone prep via Bluetooth.

The factory-installed cell phone package in the vehicle allows you to connect particular GSM or CDMA cell phones via Bluetooth ⇨ *page 19*. Calls can be made wirelessly through the cell phone prep hands-free system. You can operate your cell phone through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 53*, multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 77* or voice recognition system ⇨ *page 83*.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that cell phones can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimeters between the cell phone antenna and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the cell phone in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the cell phone off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use voice recognition system ⇨ *page 83* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Note

- Obey all applicable laws regarding use of telephones in vehicles.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas where use of cell phones is prohibited.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas at risk for an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. They may include gas stations, equipment that stores or transports fuel or chemicals, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour or sawdust) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally switch your vehicle off.

Tips

- The telephone functions depend on whether your cell phone is compatible with the cell phone prep or not and if the cell phone service provider supports these functions.
- For up-to-date information on the cell phone prep, visit www.audiusa.com/telephone (www.audicanada.ca/telephone) or your authorized Audi dealer.
- The cell phone prep is designed for use in GSM and CDMA networks.

Starting

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Bluetooth must be activated to establish a Bluetooth connection between the cell phone prep and the cell phone. Your cell phone must be *visible to others* ⇨ *page 57*.

The cell phone must be paired one time with the cell phone prep in the vehicle. The steps required for this procedure depend on the cell phone you are using. First, the system searches for available Bluetooth devices within range ⇨ *page 19*.

Pairing Bluetooth-compatible devices

There must not be any other Bluetooth devices connected to the cell phone prep during the pairing procedure. The cell phone that will be paired must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device. Also follow the instructions displayed on your cell phone.

There may be several cell phones paired with the cell phone prep, but only one cell phone at a time can be actively connected to the cell phone prep. ▶

The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It also depends on the current circumstances and on interference with other devices.

Establishing and disconnecting the Bluetooth connection

An operational cell phone which has been bonded to the cell phone package is automatically connected after the ignition is switched on. For some cell phones you have to confirm the connection.

The Bluetooth connection is disconnected after the ignition key is removed.

Tips

For current information on pairing cell phones with the cell phone prep, visit www.audiusa.com/telephone (www.audi-canada.ca/telephone) or your authorized Audi dealer.

Searching for Bluetooth-compatible devices

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

There are two ways to search for Bluetooth-compatible devices.



Fig. 13 Searching for new cell phones

Requirement: The MMI Bluetooth function must be activated ⇨ *page 57*.

Searching for cell phones

- Make sure the Bluetooth in your cell phone is activated. Your cell phone must be visible to others.
- Press the TEL function button. The message **Please connect cell phone** appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to **Search for new cell phone** ⇨ *fig. 13* and press the knob. The available Bluetooth cell phones are shown in the MMI display.

Searching for Bluetooth devices

- Press the SETUP function button.
- Press the **Bluetooth** control button. The **Bluetooth** menu appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to **Find Bluetooth devices** and press the knob. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the MMI display.

The **Find Bluetooth devices** function shows all of the Bluetooth devices within range in the MMI display.

Tips

The MMI only recognizes some cell phones through the Find Bluetooth devices function.

Pairing a cell phone

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Bluetooth technology allows a cell phone to be connected wirelessly to the vehicle MMI.



Fig. 14 The cell phone is paired with the cell phone prep and connected.

Requirement: An available cell phone must be shown in the MMI display ⇨ *page 19*.

- Turn the control knob to a cell phone and press the knob.

- ▸ To pair the cell phone, turn the control knob to **Handsfree** and press the knob. A 4-digit PIN is shown on the MMI display.
- ▸ To enter the 4-digit PIN that is displayed, select **Yes**. Enter the PIN in the cell phone when the vehicle is stationary. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds, or
- ▸ To enter any 4- to 16-digit PIN, select **No**. Enter any 4- to 16-digit pin in the speller ⇨ *page 23*. Then enter that PIN in the cell phone when the vehicle is stationary. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Confirm the pairing on the cell phone if requested. The cell phone symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 14* appears in the status line of the MMI display when the pairing process is complete.

Tips

You can find additional information about connecting your cell phone in your cell phone operator's manual.

Directory entries

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The cell phone entries are automatically loaded in the MMI.



Fig. 15 Searching for an entry in the directory

Loading directory entries

The directory entries load automatically in the MMI after the ignition is switched on. This loading process can last several minutes and depends on the number of entries in the directory.

Directory entries can be stored in a general profile and in up to four personal profiles ⇨ *page 51*.

Displaying directory entries

The directory entries are displayed in alphabetical order and identified with a symbol:

① Local MMI memory
② SIM card
③ Cell phone

Private and business entries with land line, cell phone and fax categories can be saved in the address cards.

Tips

– The directory entry display in the MMI depends on the cell phone used.
– The directory entries from the cell phone may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many directory entries, entries with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.

General operation

Switching on/off



Fig. 16 On/Off knob

Vehicles without comfort key*

- ▸ To switch the MMI on, switch the ignition on. The menu for the last main function selected is displayed. The last selected audio/video source begins playing.
- ▸ To switch the MMI off, remove the ignition key. Your settings are saved.

Vehicles with comfort key*

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button to switch the MMI on ⇨ *page 21, fig. 17*.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice to switch the MMI off ⇨ *page 21, fig. 17*. Your settings are saved.

Manual operation

- ▸ Press the On/Off knob briefly to switch the MMI on ⇨ *fig. 16*.
- ▸ To switch the MMI off, press and hold the On/Off knob until the MMI switches off.

An MMI that has been switched off manually does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

The MMI can still be operated for approximately ten minutes after switching the ignition off. If you do not press any function button, control button, or the control knob on the MMI control panel within this time, the MMI automatically switches off again.

Tips

- With the engine not running and a low battery charge, MMI switches off automatically.
- If you only press the On/Off knob briefly, the selected audio source is muted ⇨ *page 25*.

Operating the system

Press and turn the buttons on the MMI control panel to perform the MMI functions.



Fig. 17 Buttons on the MMI control panel

① Function buttons

Press a function button to start an operating mode. For example, press the RADIO function button to start the **Radio** mode.

You can open additional settings for the active operating mode using the SETUP function button.

② Control knob with joystick

Turn the control knob to the left or right and press it to select a menu item in the MMI display. You can use the joystick to move the crosshairs in a map or to control the DVD menu ⇨ *page 24*. ▸

③ Control buttons

To access the function shown in one of the four corners of the display, press the control button corresponding to this display corner. For example, the upper right control button corresponds to the upper right corner of the display ⇨ *fig. 17*.

④ Return button

Press the RETURN button to cancel a selection you have not yet confirmed or to return to the next higher menu level.

⑤ Arrow buttons

Press the I◁◁ or ▷▷I button to select the previous/next radio station.

Press the ▷▷I button to select the next track on a CD or a connected iPod. Press the I◁◁ button within the first ten seconds a track is playing to return to the previous track and after ten seconds to return to the beginning of the current track.

Press and hold the I◁◁ or ▷▷I button while in CD mode to fast forward or rewind.

MMI Display

"Standard" menus

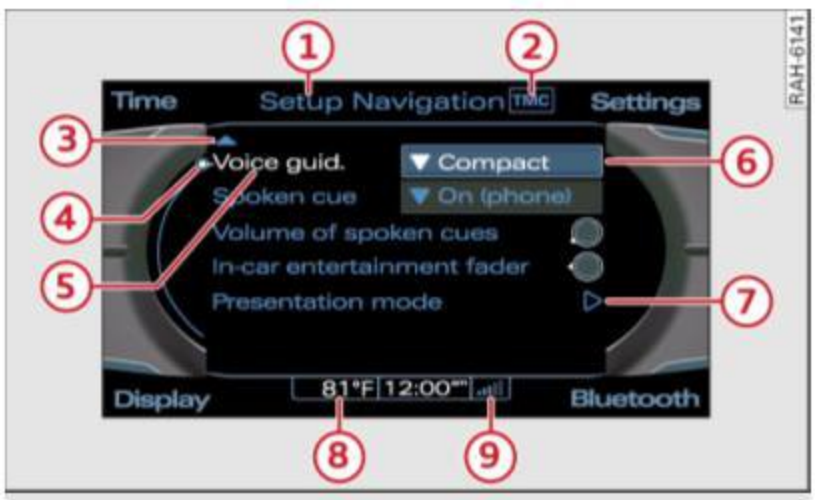


Fig. 18 Navigation Setup

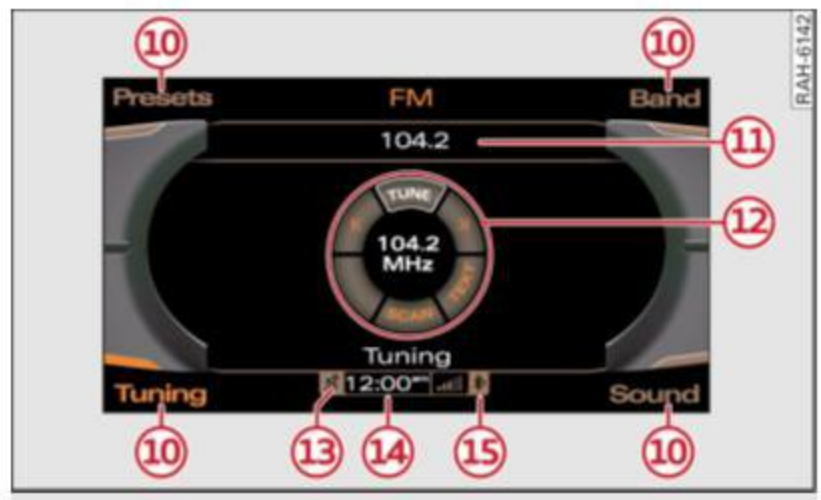


Fig. 19 Radio submenu

A menu appears in the MMI display after you press a function button ⇨ *page 21*.

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Title line	Selected mode (such as Radio ⇨ *fig. 19*) Setup display: Setup menu for the selected mode (for example Navigation Setup ⇨ *fig. 18*). On vehicles with the cell phone prep*, the cellular service provider is displayed.
②	TMC symbol	Reception of TMC traffic reports ⇨ *page 74*.
③	Arrows pointing up/down	Indicate there are additional menu items (scroll forward/back).
④	Cursor	Shows a line selected in a menu.
⑤	Selected text	A menu item you have selected has a white background.
⑥	Options box	Options for the menu item selected.
⑦	Arrow	Points to additional options or possible settings.
⑧	Temperature display	Temperature selected on vehicles with an automatic air conditioning system.
⑨	Signal strength bar*	Cell phone connection quality.

▶

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑩	Display corners	Show selectable functions. You perform the functions using the control buttons. The top right corner of the display corresponds to the top right control button.
⑪	Subtitle	Tells you about a selected option (e.g. radio station preference).
⑫	Control wheel	Is operated by turning and pressing the control knob.
⑬	Mute symbol	The active audio source is muted.
⑭	Time	Set time.
⑮	Bluetooth symbol*	Active Bluetooth connection.

Speller

You can enter addresses, navigation destinations and telephone numbers with the speller.

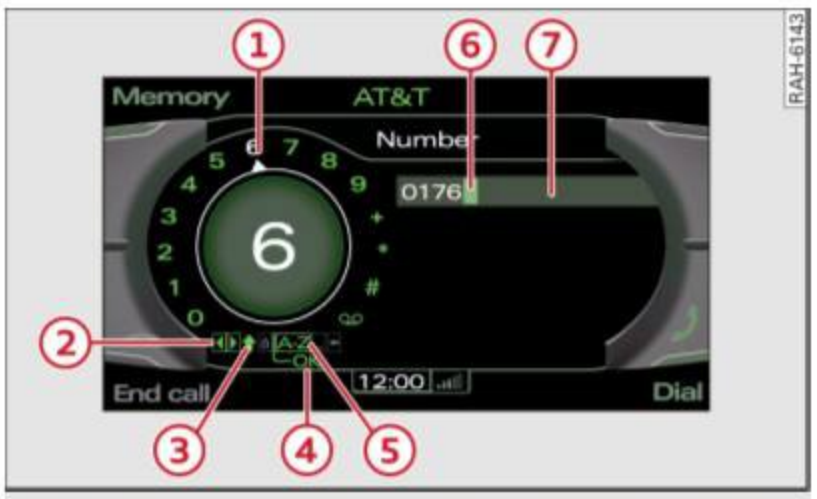


Fig. 20 Number speller: entering a telephone number

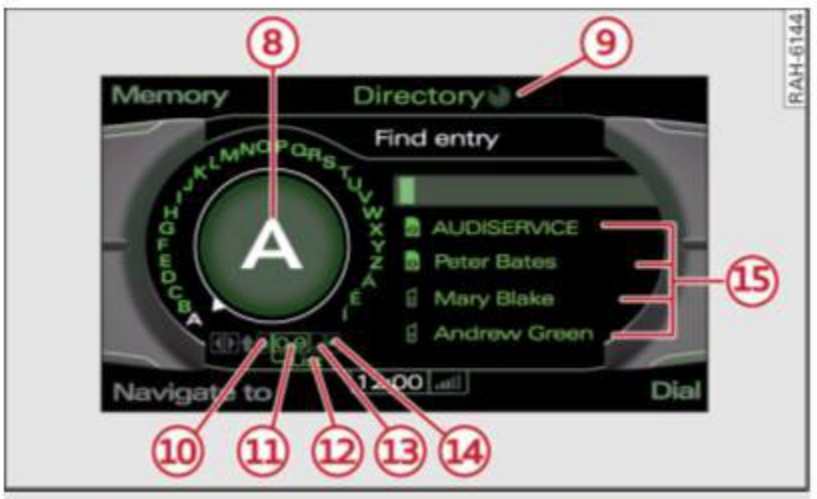


Fig. 21 Letter speller: searching for a directory entry

With some functions in the directory, it is necessary to enter letters or numbers in Telephone* or Navigation mode. The number speller ⇨ *fig. 20* or the letter speller ⇨ *fig. 21* appears in the display.

While you are making your entry, you can switch as needed from numbers to letters or from letters to numbers by turning the control knob **0-9** ⑪ ⇨ *fig. 21* or **A-Z** ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 20* and pressing the knob.

All of the symbols for entering letters and numbers are explained in the table below:

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Selection arrow	Puts a white background behind the selected element and shows it enlarged in the entry ring.
②	◀▶	Moves the cursor forward/backward in the entry field.
③	▲	Switches from lower case to upper case.
④	OK	Confirms the entry.
⑤	A-Z	Switches from number to letter entry.
⑥	Cursor	Marks the current editing position.
⑦	Entry field	Shows the current entry.

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑧	Entry ring	Shows the character selected with the selection arrow enlarged.
⑨	Update symbol	Indicates the data is updating.
⑩	â	Indicates a list with special characters depending on the language.
⑪	0-9	Switches from letter to number entry.
⑫	LIST	Shows a list of suggestions.
⑬	⎵	Inserts a space in the entry field.
⑭	⬅	Deletes the character to the left of the white highlighted cursor.
⑮	List with suggestions	Lists suggestions in alphabetical order.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols using the speller

For an overview of the speller, refer to ⇨ *page 23*.

Entering numbers, letters, and symbols

- ▸ Turn the control knob with the selection arrow ① ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20* to the letter, number or symbol. Your selection is shown enlarged in the entry ring ⑧ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 21*.
- ▸ To accept the letter, the number or the symbol, press the control knob. Your entry appears in the entry field ⑦ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20*.
- ▸ When you have entered all the digits, turn the control knob to **OK** ④ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20* and press the knob.

Deleting numbers, letters, and symbols

- ▸ Turn the control knob with the selection arrow to ⬅ ⑭ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 21*.
- ▸ To delete the last digit in the entry field, press the control knob.
- ▸ To delete all the digits in the entry field, hold the control knob down until no digits show in the entry field.

In some cases such as in the Navigation menu, the selection of letters may be limited to available entries. Only letters that are part of an available word can be selected.

Enter special characters such as the hyphen or period) with the number speller ⇨ *page 23, fig. 20*.

Joystick

You can move the crosshairs in a map or control the main menu for a video DVD with the joystick.

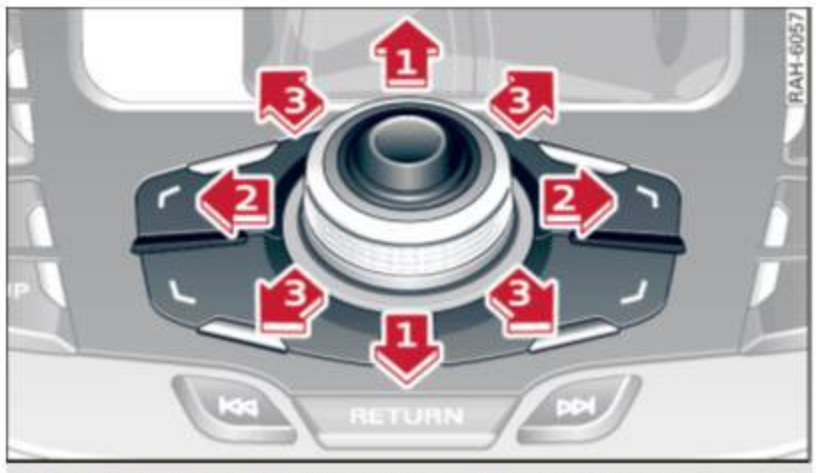


Fig. 22 MMI control panel: possible joystick movements

Requirement: A map must be visible in the MMI display ⇨ *page 66* or a video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

Moving the crosshairs in a map

- ▸ To move the crosshairs in a map vertically ① ⇨ *fig. 22*, move the joystick up or down.
- ▸ To move the crosshairs in a map horizontally ②, move the joystick to the right or left.
- ▸ To move the crosshairs in a map diagonally ③, move the joystick up or down to the right or left. ▶

Controlling the DVD main menu

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **MENU** (display main menu) ⇨ *page 40* and press the knob. The DVD main menu is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Move the joystick up or down ① or right or left ② to select a menu item.
- ▸ Press the control knob to confirm the menu selection. DVD mode continues.

Switching the MMI display on/off



Fig. 23 Switching the MMI display off

Switching the MMI display off

- ▸ Press the **Display** control button while in a setup menu.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Switch off display** ⇨ *fig. 23* and press the control knob. The display switches off.

Switching the MMI display on

- ▸ Press or turn the control knob, or
- ▸ Press the function button, a control button or the RETURN button.

Tips

– On vehicles with the cell phone prep*, if a call is made while the MMI display is switched off, the display will switch on automatically and remain on for the duration of the call.

– You can also change stations or find a selected audio/video source with the *arrow buttons* when the MMI display is switched off.

Adjusting the volume

Active audio/video source

You can adjust the volume or mute the audio/video sources using the On/Off knob.



Fig. 24 Adjusting the volume and muting the audio/video sources

Adjusting the volume

- ▸ Turn the On/Off knob to the right or left ⇨ *fig. 24*. The adjusted volume is stored.

Muting

- ▸ Press the On/Off knob briefly. A speaker symbol with a line through it appears in the MMI display. An active audio/video source is stopped.
- ▸ To cancel the muting, press or turn the On/Off knob briefly.

Volumes that are too high or too low are automatically set to a predetermined level when the MMI is switched on.

Tips

You can also adjust the volume using the right thumb wheel on the multifunction steering wheel without taking your hands off the ⇨ *page 75*.

Additional audio sources

The volume of the navigation announcements, voice recognition system and telephone can be adjusted individually.*



Fig. 25 Volume settings

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Volume settings**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The **Volume settings** menu appears in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a menu item such as **Voice recognition volume** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left or right to adjust the volume as desired.
- ▸ Press the control knob to confirm the setting.

The system automatically plays a test announcement while you are adjusting the volume.

Tips

– With the **In-car entertainment fader**, you can lower the volume of the active audio/video source during navigation announcements or when the Audi parking system* is active ⇨ *page 30*.
– On vehicles with a VDA-compatible phone upgrade, you will achieve the best sound quality if you adjust the input volume on the device to a medium level.

Adjusting the sound

Basic settings



Fig. 26 Selecting balance



Fig. 27 Adjusting balance

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu ⇨ *fig. 26*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a menu item such as **Balance** ⇨ *fig. 26* and press the knob. The selected menu item is shown enlarged in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 27*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the right or the left to adjust the sound characteristics.
- ▸ Press the control knob to confirm the setting.

The following sound adjustments are possible:

– Balance (right/left sound ratio)
– Fader (front/rear sound ratio)
– Treble
– Bass
– GALA (speed compensated volume)
– Subwoofer* (additional bass amplification)[1)]
– DSP* ⇨ *page 27* ▶

1) The subwoofer* cannot be adjusted on vehicles with the Bang & Olufsen* sound system.

– DSP Bang & Olufsen* ⇨ *page 27*
– Volume settings (for additional audio sources) ⇨ *page 26*

Treble and bass settings apply to the active mode. The balance and fader settings are independent of the mode.

Digital Signal Processing (DSP)

Applies to vehicles: with DSP

With Sound Focus, the sound can be optimized for the listener. GALA adjusts the volume and the sound characteristics to the vehicle speed.

Displaying the DSP menu

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **DSP** and press the knob. The **DSP** menu appears in the MMI display.

Sound Focus

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Sound Focus** and press the knob.
- ▸ To achieve a symmetrical sound distribution, turn the control knob to **All** and press the knob.
- ▸ To achieve a driver-oriented sound distribution, turn the control knob to **Driver** and press the knob.

GALA

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **GALA** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Active** or **Inactive**.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save your setting.

DSP Bang & Olufsen®

Applies to vehicles: with DSP Bang & Olufsen - Surround Sound

With Sound Focus, the sound can be optimized for the listener. Surround Level regulates the volume of the surround effect.

Displaying the DSP Bang & Olufsen menu

- ▸ Press the **Sound** control button while in the Media or Radio menu.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **DSP Bang & Olufsen** and press the knob. The **DSP Bang & Olufsen** menu appears in the MMI display.

Sound Focus

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Sound Focus** and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the sound so it is the same for the entire vehicle interior, turn the control knob to **All** and press the knob.
- ▸ To achieve a driver-oriented sound distribution, turn the control knob to **Driver** and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the sound so it is oriented to the front or rear of the vehicle, turn the control knob to **Front**/**Rear** and press the knob.

Surround Level

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Surround level** and press the knob.
- ▸ To change the surround effect, turn the control knob to the right or left and press the knob.

GALA Plus

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **GALA Plus** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Active** or **Inactive**.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save your setting.

Setting the time

You can choose between the quartz clock and the radio clock. You enter the time and date yourself with the quartz clock. The radio clock* sets the time and date automatically.*

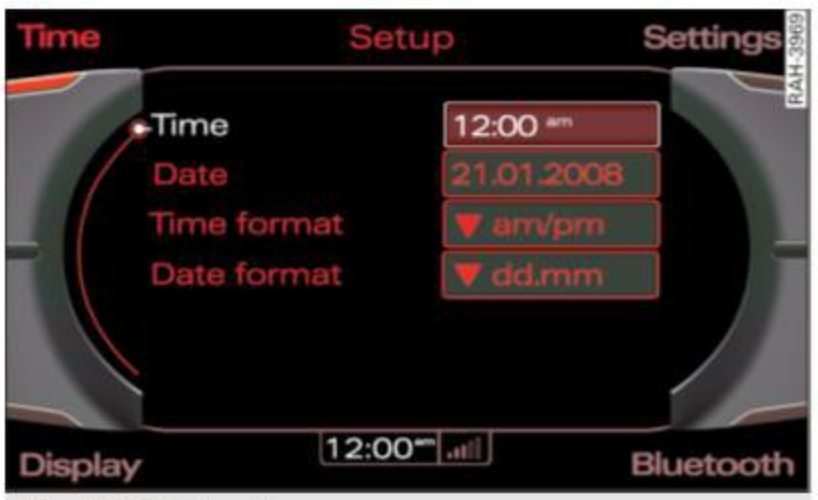


Fig. 28 Setting time

Opening the time setting menu

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Press the **Time** control button. The time setting menu appears in the MMI display.

Selecting the time source*

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Time source** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Quartz** or **Radio clock*** and press the knob. The **Radio clock*** source is indicated by the "radio clock reception signal" in the tachometer.

Setting the time with quartz time source

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Time** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*. The hour display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the hour, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob. The minute display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the minutes, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save the time you have set.

Setting the date with quartz time source

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Date** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*. The day display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the day, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob. The month display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the month, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob. The year display is highlighted in white in the MMI display.
- ▸ To set the year, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to complete the date entry.

Setting the time format

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Time format** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **24h** or **am/pm**.
- ▸ Press the control knob to save your setting.

Setting the date format

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Date format** and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the date format "Day.Month", turn the control knob to **dd.mm** and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 28*.
- ▸ To adjust the date format "Month/Day", turn the control knob to **mm/dd** and press the knob.

Tips

If the radio clock* does not receive a radio signal for three days, it automatically switches to the quartz clock.

Restarting the MMI (Reset)

MMI functionality is restored with a specific button combination.



Fig. 29 Button combination to restart the MMI

- ▸ Press and hold the SETUP function button ①, the control knob ② and the upper right control button ③ *at the same time*.
- ▸ Release the buttons. The MMI system switches off and then restarts.

Additional settings

MMI menu language

- ▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Menu language**.

The displays in the MMI display and driver information system and the language for the navigation announcements and voice recognition system can be changed. ▶

English, French and Spanish are available.

Measurement units

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Measurement units**.

The following measurement units can be set in the MMI display and driver information system.

– Distance (miles or kilometers)
– Speed (mph or km/h)
– Temperature (°F or °C)
– Pressure (psi or bar)
– Consumption (mpg (US), l/100 km, mpg (UK) or km/l)
– Volume (gallon (US), liter or gallon (UK))

Voice recognition system

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Voice recognition**.

Short dialogue

When **Short dialogue** is activated, a shorter form of the voice recognition announcements is used.

Input signal

You can switch the **Beep** input signal during a dialogue on or off.

Individual training

Individual training improves the recognition function of the voice recognition system by adapting it to your voice or pronunciation. Individual training is comprised of 40 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers.

For an overview of all voice commands, refer to ⇨ *page 82*.

Delete all name tags

All of the name tags you have stored (spoken names) are erased.

Tips

Individual training can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Default settings

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Default settings**.

You can reset the following functions to the default setting:

– Sound settings
– Radio
– Media settings
– Jukebox
– Directory
– Telephone*
– Bluetooth*
– Navigation settings
– Navigation memory
– Voice recognition

After selecting the functions, turn the control knob to **Reset systems**. Confirm your entry by turning the control knob to **Yes** and pressing it.

You can also reset all of the functions listed to the factory default settings by activating the **Select all** option.

If you reset the **Jukebox** to default settings, all of the music files are deleted and the **Media settings** are reset.

MMI display brightness

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Display** control button > **Brightness**.

You can adjusting the brightness of the display by turning the control knob to the right or left.

Version information

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Version information**. ▶

This function shows the MMI and navigation software version.

Data password

▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Settings** control button > **Data password**.

You can protect your personal data such as directory entries, navigation destinations and name tags with a personal password. If the unit is replaced, you can only transfer your personal data to the new MMI unit using your password.

Tips

If you do not assign a personal password, “MMI3G” is stored in the MMI automatically as the password.

In-car entertainment fader

▸ Select: MEDIA function button > SETUP function button > **In-car entertainment fader**.

With the **In-car entertainment fader**, you can lower the volume of the active audio/video source during navigation announcements or when the Audi parking system* is active.

You can also adjust the **In-car entertainment fader** in the Radio, Navigation or Car modes.

Listening to the radio

Introduction



Fig. 30 FM station list



Fig. 31 Sirius channel list during loss of reception

The radio has three bands: FM, AM and Sirius* (satellite radio). With an HD Radio receiver, you also receive FM/AM radio stations in digital format. The receivable stations are shown on a radio station list and can be selected directly. You can select the next receivable station by pressing a button on the MMI unit or playing all stations for a few seconds using the SCAN function ⇨ *page 33*. You can also save your favorite stations in a preset list in any order.

The radio supports reception of broadcasts in non-delayed ballgame mode. During transmission in ballgame mode, the broadcast switches automatically to the analog reception signal.

FM band

The FM station list (maximum 75 stations) is updated automatically.

AM band

The AM station list (maximum 165 stations) must be updated manually.

The stations in the station list are still displayed after leaving the reception area. Reception is lost.

HD Radio™ technology (digital radio)[1)]

The HD Radio receiver operates as a hybrid system simultaneously with the analog FM/AM bands. When the FM/AM station is available in digital format, the HD symbol (1) ⇨ *fig. 30* appears in the FM/AM station list. If the digital signal is lost, the radio switches automatically to the analog FM/AM station.

Sirius (satellite radio)*

The Sirius provider automatically updates the Sirius* channel list (maximum 224 channels). If the last channel playing is no longer available after a channel list update, channel 184 will play automatically.

If the radio signal is lost, radio stations that are not currently received are displayed in the station list with the following system information:

- **ANTENNA** - No antenna is connected to the tuner
- **LINKING** - The tuner is presently not receiving any satellite signal (1) ⇨ *fig. 31*

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

- To receive satellite programs, you must contact the Sirius* service provider ⇨ *page 32*.

1) HD Radio™ Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

– HD Radio™ is not available in Canada.

Starting radio mode

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

▸ Press the RADIO function button. The list of stations/channels or the last active radio menu appears in the MMI display.

The menu that was open the last time you listened to the radio is shown in the MMI display. Press the RADIO function button again while in radio mode to open the station/channel list.

Activating your Satellite Radio service

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service

In order to be able to receive satellite programs and traffic message channel (TMC), this service must be enabled.

In order to have the service enabled at your provider, you need the electronic serial number (ESN) of the tuner. To show the electronic serial number in the display:

Sirius station list

▸ Press the **Band** control button.
▸ Turn the control knob to **Sirius** and press the knob. The channel list is displayed.
▸ Turn the knob to **000 Sirius ID** and press the knob.

Setup menu

▸ Press the SETUP function button in the Satellite Radio menu.
▸ Select **Receiver serial number** by turning the control knob and press the control knob.

Tips

– Objects such as buildings, tunnels, bridges, terrain, other vehicles or objects on the roof of the vehicle can result in decreased performance.
– Satellite Radio reception is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. Please contact Sirius Canada for details.

Selecting frequency band

The MMI has three bands: FM, AM and satellite radio (Sirius).*

Requirement: The radio is on ⇨ *page 32*.

Band control button

▸ Press the **Band** control button.
▸ Turn the control knob to the desired frequency band.
▸ Press the control knob to select the frequency band. The current frequency band is indicated in the title line of the MMI display.

RADIO function button

▸ To select the frequency band, press the RADIO function button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is shown in the title line of the MMI display.

Tips

You can select the frequency band with the multifunction steering wheel just as easily ⇨ *page 76*.

Selecting a station from the station/ preset list

The receivable stations for the selected frequency band are displayed in the station lists.



Fig. 32 Additional HD Radio channels

From the station list

- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired radio station/channel.
- ▸ Press the control knob to select the station/ channel.

From the preset list

- ▸ Press the **Presets** control button. The preset list is displayed.
- ▸ To select a station/channel from the preset list, turn the control knob to the station/ channel.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The station/channel is selected.

To update the station list in the AM band, turn the control knob to **Update station list** and press the knob. The station lists in the FM and Sirius* bands are updated automatically.

Digital FM HD Radio channels may have several additional channels*. The available additional channels* are listed under the radio station. When leaving the reception area, additional channels* that are not received are identified with the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 32*.

Tips

You can also perform this function with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 76*.

Selecting the station



Fig. 33 Selecting the station (Sirius band)

Requirement: The desired frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

Automatic seek

- ▸ Press the **Tuning** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **>| (Seek/Skip up)** or **|< (Seek/Skip down)**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The next receivable station/channel is selected.

Manual search

- ▸ Press the **Tuning** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **TUNE/CH** (Channel number) and press the knob.
- ▸ To adjust the frequency in small stages or selecting the next/previous channel in station list, turn the control knob to the right or left.

Scanning stations

- ▸ Press the **Tuning** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **SCAN** (Scan) and press the knob.
- ▸ Press the control knob again to stop the scan function. The current station is selected.

Tips

– You can also press the *arrow buttons* on the MMI control panel briefly to switch to the previous/next station in the station list ⇨ *page 22*.

– If the scan function is activated in the AM band, the AM band station list will also be updated during the scan process. ▶

– An FM station with poor reception will no longer be displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station. However, you can save the station and select it again from the station list ⇨ *page 34*.

Storing stations

The preset list can contain up to 50 stations from all frequency bands.

Requirement: A station/channel list must be displayed ⇨ *page 33, fig. 32*.

Using the control knob

- ▸ Press and hold the control knob until the station/channel is stored in the next available position in the preset list and **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To change the position in the preset list, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to store the station/channel in the selected position.

Using the Presets control button

- ▸ Press the **Presets** control button. **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The selected station/channel is stored in the next available position in the preset list and **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To change the position in the preset list, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to store the station/channel in the selected position.

Tips

You can delete an individual station or all stations from the preset list ⇨ *page 36*.

Moving stored stations

Requirement: A station must be stored in the preset list ⇨ *page 34*.

- ▸ Press the **Presets** control button. The preset list is displayed.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a station/channel and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Move** *Station name* and press the knob. The station/channel is stored in the next available position in the preset list and **Store** *Station name* **here** appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To change the position in the preset list, turn the control knob to the left or right.
- ▸ Press the control knob to store the station/channel in the selected position.

Additional settings

HD Radio™ reception

Requirement: The FM/AM band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

- ▸ Select: RADIO function button > **Settings** control button > **HD Radio**.

You can turn the HD Radio reception **On** and **Off** manually.

HD Radio™ station info

Requirement: The FM/AM band must be selected ⇨ *page 32* and the HD Radio reception must be turned on ⇨ *page 34*.

- ▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **HD station info**.

If information such as the artist or album is available for the current track, it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Station names

Requirement: The FM frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

- ▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Station names**.

Scrolling station names

Scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the MMI display. ▶

Fixed station names

Scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the MMI display. Only the current section of the scrolling text is displayed.

Station names Off

Text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the MMI display. Scrolling text transmitted by the HD stations is shown in the MMI display.

Displaying radio text

Requirement: The FM frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > **Tuning** control button > **TEXT** (Radio text).

Radio texts are additional information transmitted by some stations (e.g. station name, artist or track).

Song information

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: Satellite Radio must be activated ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > **Tuning** control button > **INFO (Station info)**.

Some radio stations transmit additional information about the program. For example, information about the artist or album could be displayed.

Station info

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: Satellite Radio must be activated ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Station info** > **On** or **Off**.

If information is available for the current track (such as artist or album), it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Station sorting

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: The Sirius frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Station sorting**.

Channel number

The channels are listed by channel number in ascending order.

Channel name

The channel categories are listed in the main menu in alphabetical order.

Category and channel no.

The channels are listed by category and than by channel number.

Category and chan. name

The channels are listed by category and than by channel name.

Tips

The channels that are displayed in the channel list can be filtered according to your personal desires as to type of program.

Category filter

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Radio Service

Requirement: Satellite Radio must be activated ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Category filter**.

The channels that are displayed in the channel list can be filtered according to your personal desires as to type of program. The selection of program categories depends on what your provider offers.

If you select the option **Deactivate filter**, all filter options are deactivated and all available channels are displayed in the satellite channel list.

Deleting memory entries

Requirement: A frequency band must be selected ⇨ *page 32* and a station must be stored in the preset list ⇨ *page 34*.

▸ Select: RADIO function button > SETUP function button > **Delete presets**.

Delete individually

Select **Delete individually** by turning and pressing the control knob. Then select the station/channel to be deleted and press the control knob.

Delete all entries

Select **Delete all entries** by turning and pressing the control knob. All stored stations/channels are deleted from the preset list.

Playing media

Introduction

You can start and operate the CD/DVD drive, CD changer*, Jukebox, memory card reader and a portable audio device* (such as an iPod or USB storage device) using the MMI control panel. Different functions are available depending on the active source and the medium inserted. For example, you can select individual tracks or folders directly, play the tracks in random order or display information stored in an ID3/WMA/AAC tag with the current track (such as the artist, album, title, year and genre).

Starting Media mode



Fig. 34 Audio/video source overview

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- Press the MEDIA function button. The source overview ⇨ *fig. 34* or the track that was playing the last time media mode was active will be shown in the MMI display.
- If the source overview is not shown in the MMI display, press the **Source** control button.

Selecting source



Fig. 35 List of possible audio/video sources

Requirement: A source must contain an audio or video file.

- Press the MEDIA function button.
- Press the **Source** control button.
- Turn the control knob to a source and press the knob. The track list or folder structure for the selected source is shown in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to a track or a folder and press the knob.

Possible sources are:

① Jukebox
② Memory card
③ CD/DVD drive
④ Audi music interface* (such as an iPod) or external audio input
⑤ CD changer*

Selecting a folder

The folders for the active audio source are shown in the MMI display.



Fig. 36 Folder structure for an MP3 CD.

Requirement: The selected source must contain audio files.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA function button. The folder structure for the selected source is displayed ⇨ *fig. 36*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a folder.
- ▸ Press the control knob to select the folder. The tracks in the folder are displayed.

Tips

– To reach the next highest level, press the RETURN button or turn the control knob to the **Up** folder and press the knob.
– To reach the highest level in the folder structure, press the MEDIA function button.
– You can scroll through long lists of folders quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of folders.

Selecting a track

The track with the play time is shown in the MMI display.



Fig. 37 Track list

Requirement: An audio CD or a folder must be selected ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to a track ⇨ *fig. 37*.
- ▸ Press the control knob to select the track. The track will play.

If metadata (such as an ID3 tag) is available for a current track (such as the artist, album or track), it will be displayed in a pop-up window. The **Display track info** function must be activated ⇨ *page 42*.

Tips

– You can also perform this function with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 77*.
– You can scroll through long lists of tracks quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of tracks.

Fast forward/rewind

You can skip forward or back within a tracking using fast forward/rewind.



Fig. 38 Fast forward in a CD

Requirement: An audio file or a video DVD must be playing.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to ▷▷ (Forward) ⇨ *fig. 38* or ◁◁ (Rewind) and hold the knob down.

Tips

You can also press and hold the *arrow buttons* on the MMI control panel to fast forward or rewind within a track or video DVD ⇨ *page 22*.

Next/previous track or chapter

This function makes it possible to skip to the previous or next track or chapter within an audio/video source.



Fig. 39 Next chapter

Requirement: An audio file or a video DVD must be playing.

Previous/next track

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to ▷| (Next track) or |◁ (Previous track).
- ▸ Press the control knob to skip to the previous/next track. The track will play.

Next/previous chapter (video DVD)

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to ▷| (Next chapter) or |◁ (Previous chapter).
- ▸ Press the control knob to skip to the previous/next chapter.

If you select **Previous track**/**Previous chapter** within 10 seconds after a track has started to play, the previous track will start playing. If you press it after 10 seconds, the current track will begin playing again from the beginning.

Tips

You can also press the *arrow buttons* on the MMI control panel briefly to switch to the previous/next track or chapter ⇨ *page 22*.

Track information



Fig. 40 Track information

Requirement: And audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 38*.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **INFO** (Title information) ⇨ *fig. 40* and press the knob.

If metadata (such as an ID3 tag) is available for a current track (such as the artist, album or track), it will be displayed in a pop-up window.

Repeat options



Fig. 41 Repeat

Requirement: And audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 38*.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **RPT** (Repeat options) ⇨ *fig. 41* and press the knob.

The following functions can be selected for repeat:

– **Off** - the **Repeat options** are switched off.
– **Medium** - if a CD is playing in the CD changer*, the tracks on the CD will repeat. ▸

– **Folder** - the tracks in the folder will repeat.
– **Track** - the current track playing will repeat.

Tips

Shuffle also depends on the settings for the repeat options.

Shuffle

You can play the tracks in random order.



Fig. 42 Shuffle

Requirement: An audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 38* and **Repeat options** must be selected.

- Press the **Manual** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **Shuffle** ⇨ *fig. 42* and press the knob.

– **Off** repeat option - all of the files in the active audio source play in random order.
– **Medium** repeat option - if a CD is playing in the CD changer*, the tracks on the CD play in random order.
– **Folder** repeat option - the tracks in the current track list with audio files play in random order.

DVD main menu



Fig. 43 DVD main menu

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- Press the **Manual** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **MENU** (Display main menu) ⇨ *fig. 43* and press the knob. The DVD main menu is shown in the MMI display.
- To select a menu item, turn the control knob to the item and press the knob.

Tips

You can also control the DVD main menu with the joystick ⇨ *page 24*.

DVD full screen display

The video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons. You can still hear the sound.



Fig. 44 DVD full screen

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37* and the vehicle must be stopped.

- Press the **Manual** control button.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to ⟲ (Display full screen) ⇨ *fig. 44* and press the knob. The video image expands to fill the entire MMI display.
- ▸ To deactivate the full screen display, turn the control knob back to ⟲ (Display full screen) and press the knob.

DVD parental control

You can restrict the playback of video DVDs with the parental control. The settings are protected by a password.



Fig. 45 Selecting the content rating

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

Selecting the content rating

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Parental control** and press the knob.
- ▸ Enter the password using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Content rating** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a level (such as **Level 5**) and press the knob. The selected level is stored.

Change password

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Parental control** and press the knob.
- ▸ Enter the password using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Change password** and press the knob.
- ▸ Enter the new parental control password using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob.
- ▸ Enter the new parental control password again.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry. The new password is stored.

In accordance with the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA), the following eight levels can be selected for **Parental control**:

Parental Level	Description
Level 1 - G	Unrestricted audience
Level 2	Most audiences
Level 3 - PG	Mature young audience
Level 4 - PG-13	Teenage audience
Level 5	Mature teenage audience
Level 6 - R	Mature audience
Level 7 - NC-17	Adult audience
Level 8 - Adult	Most restricted audience

If you select **Level 5**, for example, for the parental control level, all DVDs from level 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play.

The **Off** setting deactivates all restrictions.

Tips

- The password “1234” is set for the **Parental control** at the factory.
- Password entry will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row.
- Only your authorized Audi dealer can reset the parental control password.

Pausing/continuing playback



Fig. 46 Pausing/continuing playback

Requirement: An audio file or a video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 38*.

- ▸ Press the **Manual** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to || (pause) ⇨ *fig. 46* and press the knob. Playback is paused and the mute symbol (13) ⇨ *page 22, fig. 19* appears in the status line of the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to || (pause) again and press the knob.

Tips

- – You can also pause and continue playback in the active audio source with the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 75*.
- – You can also perform this function with the multifunction steering wheel without removing your hands from the wheel ⇨ *page 77*.

Additional settings

Track display

Requirement: A folder with audio files must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Select: SETUP function button > **Track display**

File name

The name of the file is displayed without the file extension.

Track name

The track name, for example from the ID3 tag, is displayed.

Tips

The **Track display** function is not available for the Jukebox or a connected iPod.

Displaying track information

Requirement: A folder with audio files must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Select: MEDIA function button > SETUP function button > **Display track info**.

If information is available for the current track (such as artist or album), it will be displayed in a pop-up window if this function is activated.

Aspect ratio

Requirement: A video DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- ▸ Select: MEDIA function button > SETUP function button > **Aspect ratio**.

The following functions can be selected for the aspect ratio:

- – **Automatic adjustment** - the aspect ratio is adjusted automatically. The image width varies depending on film format.
- – **Standard (4:3)** - the DVD image is displayed in **4:3** format.
- – **Widescreen (16:9)** - the DVD image is displayed in **16:9** format.
- – **Zoom** - the DVD image is expanded to fill the complete display.
- – **Cinemascope** - the image is displayed in the **1:2.35** aspect ratio.

Input level

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface or Aux-in connection

Requirement: A portable audio device must be connected with the 3.5 mm stereo jack adapter cable* ⇨ *page 16*. ▶

- Select: MEDIA function button > Source External audio input/Audi music interface > SETUP function button > **Input level**.

The volume of the portable audio device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume of the portable audio device to 70 percent of the maximum output.

Directory

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The MMI contains an extensive directory. You can manage up to 5,000 entries with the directory ⇨ *page 52*. You can transfer up to 2,000 directory entries from your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The imported directory entries are stored in the general profile or in your personal profile in the MMI ⇨ *page 50*. You can also manually store up to 100 entries per profile in the MMI local memory.

You can store up to five telephone numbers (land line, cell and fax) for each entry. You can store a private and work navigation destination in the local MMI memory for up to 100 entries. You can then use these entries directly from the directory for communication and navigation.

Opening the directory

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 47 List of entries

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- Press the NAME function button. A list of entries ⇨ *fig. 47* or the last active directory menu appears in the MMI display.
- If a list of entries ⇨ *fig. 47* does not appear in the MMI display, press the NAME function button again.

The directory entries are displayed in alphabetical order and identified with a symbol ⇨ *fig. 47*.

① Local MMI memory
② SIM card
③ Cell phone

Storing a new directory entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You must enter a name for the new entry first. Then you can enter additional optional information such as telephone numbers, address or navigation destination.



Fig. 48 Storing a new entry

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*.

- Turn the control knob to **New entry** ⇨ *fig. 48* and press the knob. An input field appears in the MMI display.
- Press the control knob to open the **Name** field. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- Enter the name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry. The input field appears again in the MMI display.
- To enter additional data, select a field with the control knob and follow the instructions above.

You can store up to five telephone numbers in an address card. You can also assign a **Type** (**Business** or **Private**) and a **Category** (**Land line**, **Cell** or **Fax**) to a telephone number. You can also identify a frequently used telephone number as a **Preferred phone number**. That number is then displayed first in the open address card. ▶

Tips

– Entries are stored automatically during input.
– The new entry is stored in the local memory for the current profile. The local memory for the current profile is limited to 100 entries.

Importing directory entries

Importing a phone book

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Directory entries from a cell phone can be imported into the directory manually.



Fig. 49 Importing a phone book

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and the cell phone prep ⇨ *page 18* must be active.

- Press the **Memory** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **Import phone book** ⇨ *fig. 49* and press the knob. The phone book in the connected cell phone is imported.

If you have not created a personal profile ⇨ *page 50*, the phone book will be imported into the general profile. When connecting a cell phone, the existing entries are overwritten with the entries in the cell phone that is currently connected. Up to 2,000 entries can be imported into the general profile.

Tips

The directory entries in the current profile are updated automatically when a cell phone is connected.

Importing a phone number

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can import a phone number for an existing entry in the directory.



Fig. 50 Entering the phone number using the speller



Fig. 51 Transferring the number from the call lists

Requirement: A new entry must stored in the directory ⇨ *page 44* or an existing entry in the local MMI memory will be edited ⇨ *page 48*.

- Turn the control knob to **Phone numbers** and press the knob.
- Turn the control knob to **New phone number** and press the knob. An input field appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to **Number** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display.
- Select **List** ⇨ *fig. 50* in the speller and press the control knob. The **Import from** menu appears in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 51*. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to a call list (for example **Dialed numbers** ⇨ *fig. 51*) from which the phone number will be imported and press the knob. A list of phone numbers appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a phone number and press the knob. The phone number is imported into the address card and stored automatically.

You can also enter a phone number directly in the **Number** field using the speller without using the import function.

If the functions are grayed out, make sure your cell phone is paired with the cell phone prep. Also make sure there are phone numbers in the call lists on your cell phone.

Tips

The import function depends on the cell phone. Grayed out functions cannot be selected.

Importing address cards

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Address cards in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory with a memory card or a USB storage device.*

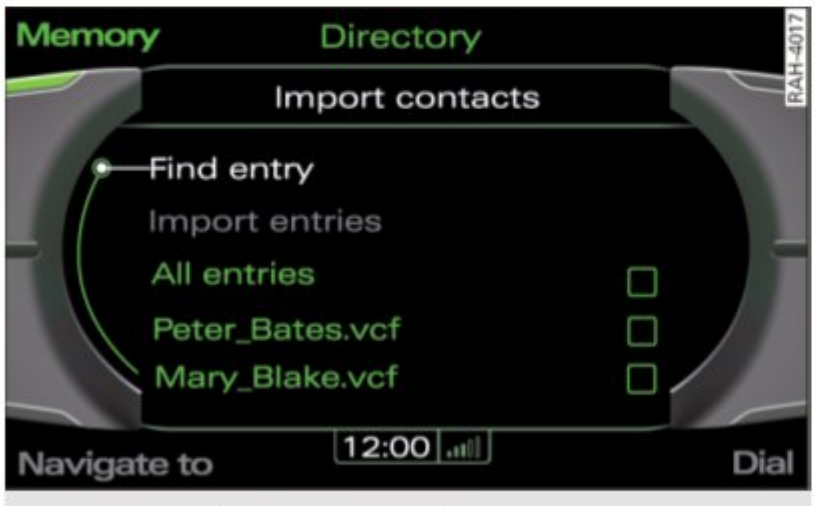


Fig. 52 Importing address cards

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and a memory card must be inserted in the memory card reader ⇨ *page 13* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* using a USB adapter cable* ⇨ *page 16*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Import contacts** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **SD card 1**, **SD card 2** or **USB storage device** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **All entries** or a certain entry in the list ⇨ *fig. 52* and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Import entries** and press the knob to import the selected entry or all entries.
- ▸ To search for an entry in the cell phone directory, turn the control knob to **Find entry**. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry.

Tips

– The address import depends on the cell phone. Only structured addresses that have information regarding country, city, ZIP code and street can be imported.
– You can check the directory memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 52*.
– The imported address cards are stored in the local memory for the current profile.

Exporting address cards

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Directory entries can be exported to a memory card or USB storage device in vCard format (.vcf).

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Export contacts** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry in the list or **All entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ To search for an entry, turn the control knob to **Find entry** ⇨ *page 46, fig. 52*. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry. The entry is selected. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Export entries individually** or **Export packed entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the source **SD card 1**, **SD card 2** or **USB storage device** and press the knob.

You can export packed directory entries or individual entries.

– **Export entries individually** - a vCard file (.vcf) is created for each directory entry during the export.
– **Export packed entries** - only one vCard file (.vcf) is created for all directory entries during export.

Using a directory entry

Searching

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can select an entry directly from a list or search for it using the speller.



Fig. 53 Searching for an entry

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and entries must be displayed ⇨ *page 44*.

Selecting an entry from a list

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry ⇨ *page 44, fig. 48* and press the knob. The address card is shown in the MMI display.

Searching for an entry using the speller

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** ⇨ *fig. 53* and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter a name using the speller, or
- ▸ Select a name in the speller from **LIST**.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry.

Tips

– You can change, delete ⇨ *page 49*, call up or navigate to ⇨ *page 48* an existing entry.
– You can also search for an entry easily using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 86*.

Selecting

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can make calls to entries with phone numbers.



Fig. 54 Calling up an entry

Requirement: The directory must be open and list of directory entries must be displayed ⇨ *page 44*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The address card appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a phone number ⇨ *fig. 54* and press the **Dial** control button. The call is made, or
- ▸ Press the control knob. The telephone menu appears in the MMI display with the speller and the selected phone number.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob. The connection is established.

Tips

You can also make calls easily using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 86*.

Navigating

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can navigate directly to entries in the directory that have navigation destinations.



Fig. 55 Selecting a navigation destination

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and must contain stored entries with private or business navigation destinations ⇨ *fig. 55*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob.
- ▸ If an entry contains two navigation destinations (private and business), turn and press the control knob to select a navigation destination.
- ▸ Press the **Navigate to** control button, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Navigate to** ⇨ *fig. 55* and press the knob. The navigation menu appears in the MMI display with the selected navigation destination.

Editing a directory entry

Storing a navigation destination

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can store a business and a personal navigation destination for an existing entry in the directory.



Fig. 56 Navigation destination input field



Fig. 57 Setting a navigation destination from the last destinations

Requirement: An address card must be open for editing ⇨ *fig. 56* and a private/business navigation destination must be selected or a new entry must be created ⇨ *page 44*.

Entering a navigation destination

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field is shown in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Country** and press the knob. A list of countries appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a country and press the knob. The land is entered in the input field.
- ▸ To enter additional data, select a field with the control knob and follow the instructions ▶

above. Your entries are automatically stored in the address card.

Selecting from an address

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The stored address is automatically set as the navigation destination.

Selecting from last destinations

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field is shown in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- Turn the control knob to **Last destinations** ⇨ *fig. 57* and press the knob. A list of the last destinations appears in the MMI display.
- Turn the control knob to a navigation destination and press the knob. The navigation destination is stored in the address card.

Setting based on the current position

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field appears ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- Turn the control knob to **Current position** ⇨ *fig. 57* and press the knob. The data for the current position is set as the navigation destination.

Selecting from points of interest

- Turn the control knob to **Create nav. destination** and press the knob. The input field is shown in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 56*.
- Turn the control knob to **Point of interest** ⇨ *fig. 56* and press the knob.
- Turn the control knob to **Top categories** for example and press the knob.

A private and a business navigation destination can be assigned to each directory entry. You can call up the stored navigation destinations in the Navigation menu using the **Memory** control button (**Load from directory**) ⇨ *page 68*.

You can find the next rest stop, gas station, Audi dealer or hospital under the **Top destinations** menu item. The **Point of interest** ⇨ *fig. 56* menu item contains additional submenus that you can use to create navigation destinations. For more information about the submenus, refer to ⇨ *page 63*.

Tips

- You can also display a navigation destination as a **Favorite**. The navigation destination is then displayed in the destination entry menu under the Navigation menu ⇨ *page 69*.
- Entries that have an assigned navigation destination are stored in the local memory for the current profile. The current profile is limited to 100 entries.

Changing an entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can edit the entries in the MMI local memory at any time.



Fig. 58 Editing an entry

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *fig. 58*.

- Turn the control knob to **Edit entry** ⇨ *fig. 58* and press the knob. An input field appears in the MMI display.
- Select a field with the control knob and press the knob to edit the entry data.

You cannot edit directory entries from the cell phone memory directly in the MMI. To edit an entry from the cell phone, turn the control knob to **Copy for editing** and press the knob. A copy of the entry is stored in the MMI memory.

The MMI cannot automatically update changed directory entries in the connected ▶

cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone entries directly in the cell phone.

Deleting an entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can delete the entries in the MMI local memory at any time.

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *page 49, fig. 58*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete entry** ⇨ *page 49, fig. 58* and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to delete an entry. The entry is deleted from the MMI local memory.

Reading a name

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The MMI automatically creates a name tag for each entry in the directory. You can also assign up to 50 personal name tags for address cards using the voice recognition system.

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*.

Reading in an address card

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The address card is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Read name** and press the knob. The name is read.

Reading in the SETUP menu

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Read voice memos** and press the knob. A list with personal name tags appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The name tags are played.

Tips

– You can only assign and store personal name tags using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 87*.

– You can also read all the names easily using the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 87*.

Deleting a name tag

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*.

Deleting in the address card

- ▸ Turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob. The address card is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete name tag** and press the knob. The name tag is deleted.

Deleting in the SETUP menu

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete voice memos** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete individually** or **Delete all entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to begin the deletion process.

Tips

– You can only delete personal assigned name tags.

– There is another way to delete all name tags. For more information, refer to ⇨ *page 29*.

Managing profiles

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

A general profile and up to four personal profiles are available in the directory.

A personal profile is useful if you will be connecting different cell phones to the MMI. In the personal profile, you have immediate access to the cell phone directory entries when you connect the phone. The directory entries are updated automatically in the background. ▸

The entries for the connected cell phone are loaded into the general profile. When that happens, the entries from the last cell phone that was connected to the general profile are overwritten.

Creating a profile

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 59 Creating a profile

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44*, the cell phone prep ⇨ *page 18* must be activated and the automatic import of cell phone directory entries must be complete.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Create profile** ⇨ *fig. 59* and press the knob. The profile name is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to store the profile.

The Bluetooth name of the connected cell phone is automatically set as the profile name. However, you can assign your own profile names ⇨ *page 52*.

Tips

The **Create profile** menu item is only available when a cell phone is connected. In addition, there must not be a profile already stored for the connected cell phone.

Deleting profiles

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 60 Deleting other profiles

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and a profile must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 51*.

Deleting the current profile

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete current profile** ⇨ *page 51, fig. 59* and press the knob. All directory entries for the current profile are deleted.

Deleting other profiles

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete other profiles** ⇨ *fig. 60* and press the knob. A list with all of the stored profiles and the directory for the general profile appears in the MMI display. The current profile is not displayed in the list.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a stored profile or **Directory** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Confirm your entry by turning the control knob to **Yes** and pressing it. The speller appears in the MMI display to enter the **ID number**.
- ▸ Enter the last seven characters of your vehicle's **VIN** with the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob to confirm your entry. ▶

You can find the **Vehicle ID number (VIN)** in the CAR menu or the vehicle registration. To obtain the **Vehicle ID number (VIN)**, press the CAR function button. Turn the control knob to **Vehicle ID number (CAR)** and press the knob.

Changing profile names

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The directory must be open ⇨ *page 44* and a profile must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 51*.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Manage profiles** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Change profile names** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display with the profile name in the input field.
- ▸ Turn the speller to ⬅ and press the control knob until the profile name in the input field is deleted.
- ▸ Enter a new profile name using the speller, then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob to confirm your entry.

Additional settings

Memory capacity

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

- ▸ Select: NAME function button > **Memory** control button > **Memory capacity**.

The **Memory capacity** for the current profile and the entire memory is displayed.

You can manage up to 5,000 entries with the directory. You can import up to 2,000 entries into the general profile or your personal profile. You can also manually store up to 100 entries per profile in the MMI local memory.

Calling

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can use a cell phone comfortably with the MMI. Many functions you are familiar with from your cell phone are available: you can answer and end calls or place them on hold. You can also access the MMI directory and the cell phone directory.

The active audio source is muted during an incoming/outgoing call and the drive is paused ⇨ *page 25*. After the call has ended, the audio source is restored to the previous volume level.

If you do not want to hear navigation announcements during a phone call, you can switch off that option ⇨ *page 72*.

Note

– Switch the phone system off through the Telephone Setup menu in areas where cell phone usage is prohibited. Obey all applicable instructions and regulations.
– Switch your cell phone off in areas at risk for an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. They may include gas stations, equipment that stores or transports fuel or chemicals, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour or sawdust) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally switch your vehicle off.

Tips

The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Starting Telephone mode

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 61 Speller for entering a phone number

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

▸ Press the TEL function button. The speller ⇨ *fig. 61* or the last active Telephone menu appears in the MMI display.

You open the speller by pressing the TEL function button in telephone mode.

Dialing a telephone number

Directly through the speller

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The speller can be used to enter a phone number directly as a series of numbers or letters.



Fig. 62 Entering telephone numbers using the number speller



Fig. 63 Entering telephone numbers using the letter speller

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18* and the speller must appear in the display ⇨ *fig. 62*.

Entering the phone number as a sequence of numbers

- ▸ Enter the phone number using the speller.
- ▸ Confirm your entry by selecting **OK** in the speller and pressing, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button. As the number is being dialed, the audio source is muted.

Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters

- ▸ Enter an area code with the speller.
- ▸ To change to the letter speller, turn the speller to **A-Z** (1) ⇨ *fig. 62* and press the control knob.
- ▸ Use the speller to enter a series of letters such as *AUDISERVICE* ⇨ *fig. 63*.
- ▸ Confirm your entry by selecting **OK** in the speller and pressing, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button. The entered telephone number is dialed.

If you enter a phone number incorrectly, you can press on the RETURN button to completely delete the number you entered in the speller.

Tips

– DTMF tones can be entered directly through the speller or loaded from the stored phone numbers ⇨ *page 54*.
– The audio source is muted during an incoming/outgoing call.
– If you switch **Off** voice guidance while in navigation mode, navigation commands will not play during a call ⇨ *page 72*.
– If you have switched the MMI display off, it will switch on automatically and remain on for the duration of the call.

From a list

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 64 Dialing a phone number from a list

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18*.

Searching and calling telephone numbers in a list

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button. ▶

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Directory**, **Dialed numbers**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The phone numbers from the selected list appear in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired telephone number.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The selected telephone number is copied to the speller.
- ▸ To initiate the call, turn the speller to **OK** and press the control knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button.

Dialed number list quick display and calling a number

- ▸ Press the TEL function button. The speller is shown in the MMI display. There is *no* telephone number in the entry field of the speller.
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button. The **Dialed numbers** list appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired telephone number.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The selected telephone number is copied to the speller.
- ▸ To initiate the call, turn the speller to **OK** and press the control knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button.

Tips

The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Answering/ignoring a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 65 Answering an incoming call

Requirement: An incoming call.

Answering a call

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Answer** and press the knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Answer** control button.

Ignoring a call

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Ignore** and press the knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Ignore** control button.

The *Name*, *Phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the display depending on whether the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

Tips

- – You can accept an incoming call during an active call. The active call is placed on hold automatically.
- – The audio source is muted during an incoming/outgoing call.
- – If you would not like to hear navigation announcements during a phone call, you can switch them off ⇨ *page 72*.
- – A call can also be answered/ignored using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 79*.

Ending a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: You have an active call or are dialing a call.

- To end a phone call or to cancel dialing, press the **End call** control button ⇨ *page 56, fig. 66*.

Tips

A call can also be ended using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 79*.

Storing a phone number in the directory

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

A new phone number or a number from the call lists can be stored in the directory.



Fig. 66 Storing the phone number in the directory

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18*.

New phone number

- Enter a new phone number in the speller ⇨ *page 54*.
- Press the **Memory** control button ⇨ *fig. 66*.
- Turn the control knob to **Store current number** and press the knob.
- To create a new entry, turn the control knob to **New entry** ⇨ *page 44, fig. 48* and press the control knob ⇨ *page 44*, or
- To add a phone number to an existing entry, turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob ⇨ *page 47*, or
- Turn the control knob to an entry in the list and press the knob. The address card opens.
- Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob. The phone number is stored.

Phone number from a call list

- Press the **Memory** control button.
- Turn the control knob to **Dialed numbers**, **Received calls** or **Missed calls**.
- Press the control knob. The available phone numbers are listed in the display.
- Turn the control knob to the phone number that will be stored and press the knob.
- Turn the control knob to **Store** and press the knob.
- To create a new entry, turn the control knob to **New entry** ⇨ *page 44, fig. 48* and press the control knob ⇨ *page 44*, or
- To add a phone number to an existing entry, turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob ⇨ *page 47*, or
- Turn the control knob to an entry in the list and press the knob. The address card opens.
- Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob. The phone number is stored.

Tips

You can edit the directory ⇨ *page 44*.

Dialing stored phone numbers

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can dial a phone number from the call lists or from the MMI directory.



Fig. 67 Searching stored telephone numbers

Requirement: Telephone mode must be started ⇨ *page 18* and a phone number must be stored.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Directory**, for example.
- ▸ Press the control knob. **Find entry** and a list of stored entries appear in the MMI at the same time ⇨ *fig. 67*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** ⇨ *fig. 67* and press the knob. The speller appears in the display so you can enter names, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a name from the list and press the control knob. The phone number is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To dial the phone number, press the control knob and then select **OK** in the speller and press the knob, or
- ▸ Press the **Dial** control button.

Deleting local call lists

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: Telephone mode must be active ⇨ *page 18*.

Delete individually

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete local call lists** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Dialed numbers**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to delete a call list.

Delete all entries

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete local call lists** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete all entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to delete all the call lists.

Bluetooth settings

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 68 Bluetooth symbol

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Press the **Bluetooth** control button. The Bluetooth settings menu is shown in the MMI display.

Switching Bluetooth on/off

The MMI Bluetooth function can be switched **On** or **Off**. The Bluetooth symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 68* appears in the MMI display when the function is switched on.

Discovery mode

The visibility of the cell phone prep or cell phone can be switched **On** or **Off**. When auto is selected, the cell phone prep is visible to cell phones for approximately five minutes when the vehicle is stopped and the ignition key is inserted. The visibility switches off after that. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with cell phones that have already been paired when the visibility is switched off. The function should be switched off when the pairing process is complete so the cell phone prep is not visible to others.

Find Bluetooth devices

The system searches for lists of Bluetooth devices that are within range.

Paired devices

Bluetooth devices that have been paired with the MMI are listed. The active connected Bluetooth device is identified with the Bluetooth symbol. ▸

To delete paired Bluetooth devices individually, select the device and delete it with the **Delete device** function.

Bluetooth name

The name of the cell phone prep (such as "AUDI MMI 2613") is displayed and can be changed.

Delete Bluetooth devices

All paired cell phones can be deleted by confirming with **Yes**.

Additional settings

Options during a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: There must be an active phone call ⇨ *page 54*.

▸ Select: **Options** control button.

Switching the microphone off and on

When the microphone is **Mute** the connected party cannot hear anything from your phone. However, you can hear your connected party. **Mute off** appears in the MMI display.

Accepting another call

If another call comes in during an active call, the **Answer** and **Ignore** functions appear in the MMI display.

If you select **Answer**, the active call is put on hold and the incoming call is active. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored.

Replacing a call

If a call comes in while you have an active call and another call on hold, the **Replace** and **Ignore** functions appear in the MMI display.

If you select **Replace**, the active call will be replaced with the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored. A call on hold remains in queue.

The display in the MMI may still be visible for a few seconds depending on the cell phone in use. If you use the **Replace** or **Ignore** functions in the MMI while the display is still visible, the current telephone call will be ended.

Tips

The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone to be alerted to an incoming call during an active call. The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider.

Telephone settings

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

▸ Select: TEL function button > SETUP function button > **Telephone settings**.

Ring tone volume

You can increase (**Vol. -**) or decrease (**Vol. +**) the ring tone volume.

Call volume

The call volume can be adjusted.

Call options

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

▸ Select: TEL function button > SETUP function button > **Call options**.

3-way calling (GSM)

– **On** - When a call is in progress, you can accept an incoming call using the **Answer** option. The active call is put on hold. You can also put an active call on hold using the **Hold** option and start another call or a conference call.
– **Off** - You can replace a call in progress with an incoming call using the **Replace** option. You can ignore an incoming call using the **Ignore** option. You *cannot* put an active call on hold or start another call.

Auto redial

– **On** - a phone number will be redialed automatically up to five times if it is busy. Automatic redial can be cancelled with the **End call** function.
– **Off** - a phone number is *not* redialed if it is busy.

▶

Auto answer

– **On** - An incoming call is answered automatically. This can be ignored with the **Ignore** function if the call was not answered automatically.
– **Off** - An incoming call is *not* answered automatically.

Invert call lists

The telephone numbers in the call lists are sorted according to the time they called. Switching this function on will sort them in the opposite order.

Voicemail number

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

▸ Select: TEL function button > SETUP function button > **Voicemail number**.

Enter the voicemail number with the speller or from a **List** (directory) and store with **OK**.

When a voicemail number is stored, the voicemail can be accessed with the ⌾ symbol in the speller.

This service must be set up and activated in advance in the cell phone network. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Tips

The mailbox number depends on the cell phone service provider.

Navigating

Introduction

Let the "Global Positioning System" (GPS) lead you to your destination!

Studying complicated maps, skimming through confusing atlases - that is all in the past! Now simply enter your desired destination in the navigation system and follow the directions given. Or you can navigate to your destination with up to nine stopovers.

The system provides directions in the form of spoken cues that inform you about all driving maneuvers early enough to perform them. In what language would you like to hear the navigation announcements? You can choose from English, French and Spanish. You can repeat the current navigation announcement by pressing the right thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 80*.

The route is shown on a map in the MMI display ⇨ *page 66*. You can also display information about your route in the driver information system ⇨ *page 67*.

You do not want to follow one of the directions? No problem! The navigation system recalculates the route based on the current vehicle position. When dynamic route is activated, the navigation system takes traffic reports into account so you can reach your destination more quickly.

The navigation system will notify you if your vehicle is in a location the system does not recognize (such as a parking lot or parking garage).

WARNING

- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Refer to and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 6, Traffic safety tips*.
- Obey all traffic laws when driving.
- The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Note

- If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.
- Adjust the volume of the navigation system so signals from outside the vehicle such as police and fire sirens can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

- Snow and objects on the GPS antenna or shade from trees and large buildings can prevent satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
- When the vehicle is at an altitude above approximately 3000 meters, the MMI hard drive shuts down temporarily to protect it. Navigation mode and the Jukebox are not available when that happens. All of the MMI functions will be available again as usual once you start the engine again at a location below 3000 meters.
- Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.
- Contact your authorized Audi dealer for information on updating the navigation information.

Starting Navigation mode



Fig. 69 Entry field

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

- Press the NAV function button. The input field ⇨ *fig. 69* or the last active navigation menu appears in the MMI display.

The menu that was open the last time you used the navigation system is shown in the MMI display. Press the NAV function button again while in Navigation mode to switch to the input field.

Tips

The navigation system can be opened in demo mode for simulations or planning purposes when the vehicle is stationary ⇨ *page 72*.

Entering a destination

Tips for entering a destination



Fig. 70 Entering the destination using the speller

Cities

When making an entry with the speller, the system suggests cities that you have entered in the past. The suggested city is shown in the speller input field ⇨ *fig. 70*. Additional cities that match your entry are listed below. The number of cities found is displayed at the bottom right Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 70*.

If the desired city is shown in the speller input field or the list below, you can press and hold the control knob to switch to the city list.

Street

You can also begin entering a destination with the street name. From the list of suggestions that follows, select a city in which you would like to enter a street or select the menu item **In all cities** to search for a streets independent of the location. When entering the street, the system suggests street names that match the entry.

After selecting the street, you can define the destination in detail by entering an **Intersection** or **House number**.

Points of interest in a city

By selecting a point of interest, you can select landmarks and public places (hospitals, movie theaters, recreation areas, etc.) as destinations.

Downtown (end entry)

The navigation system calculates the route to the center of the city entered.

Select destination on map

You can select a new destination from the map by moving the crosshairs horizontally, vertically or diagonally with the joystick ⇨ *page 24* ⇨ *page 62*.

Tips

Has your route or tour plan changed? No problem! Simply select the destination/ stopover with he control knob and press ▶

the knob. You can now **Drive to this destination now** or **Change**, **Move** or **Delete** the destination/stopover.

Entering a destination with an address

A single destination always consists of a region and city. You can pinpoint the destination more closely by entering a street name or point of interest.



Fig. 71 Entering a house number/intersection

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- If the input field ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* is not shown in the MMI display, press the NAV function button.
- Turn the control knob to **Region** and press the knob. A list of regions is displayed.
- Turn the control knob to select a region and press the knob to enter that region into the input field.
- Turn the control knob to **City/ZIP** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- Enter the city or ZIP code using the speller and confirm the entry with **OK**.
- To complete the entry, turn the control knob to **Downtown (end entry)** and press the knob, or
- To enter additional information about the destination or to enter a stopover, turn the control knob to **Street** or **Point of interest in city** and press the knob.
- Entering additional information.
- To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

To enter a house number or intersection after you have completed entering your destination, turn and press the control knob to select the line (1) ⇨ *fig. 71* and complete your entry.

Tips

To repeat the last navigation announcement, press the **Nav-Info** control button ⇨ *page 71* or the right thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 75*.

Setting a destination from the map

A point on the map can be selected as a destination or stopover, stored in the directory or called up.*



Fig. 72 Changing the destination with the crosshairs



Fig. 73 Setting a map location as the destination

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- Press the **Map** control button. A map is shown in the MMI display. ▶

- ▸ Slide the crosshairs ⇨ *fig. 72* horizontally, vertically or diagonally with the joystick to the desired destination ⇨ *page 24*.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The map side menu is activated.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Opt. menu** and press the knob. The **Map position** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as destination** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as single destination** or **Set as stopover** ⇨ *page 64* and press the knob.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

If a destination is *not* present in the navigation data, you can move the crosshairs to the location of the desired city and set the geodata as a destination or add an entry in the directory.

Tips

– If you stop moving the crosshairs for a moment, additional information about the position of the crosshairs (such as city or street name if available) will be displayed.
– Turn the control knob to the left or right to increase or decrease the map scale in order to locate the desired destination more quickly with the crosshairs.

Entering a point of interest

Points of interest can be selected in the input field when entering single destinations. Six search categories are available.

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Point of interest** ⇨ *page 62, fig. 71* and press the knob. A list with search categories for points of interest appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Top categories** for example and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a category such as **Next parking lot**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list, for example of parking lots, appears in the MMI display. Arrows indicate the direction and the distance from the vehicle to the point of interest.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to a point of interest that is displayed and press the control knob. Details about the point of interest are displayed.
- ▸ To set the point of interest as a destination, turn the control knob to **Set as destination** and press the knob.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

Additional search categories are:

In immediate vicinity

The point of interest is within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function is useful when planning stopovers.

In vicinity of destination

The point of interest is in the vicinity of a destination that has been entered. For example, you can find a hotel in the destination city with this function. Points of interest can be selected from various categories.

In new city

Enter the name of the city using the speller. You can either search for the point of interest by name or select it from various categories. This function is useful for searching for points of interest in a city independent from the destination. ▶

Nationwide

You can either search for the point of interest by name or select it from various categories. The point of interest is independent from the vehicle position and navigation destination. For example, you can navigate to an airport in the selected country using this function.

Tips

– The points of interest in the **Top categories**, **In immediate vicinity** and **In vicinity of destination** search categories are sorted according to straight-line distance. The distance from the vehicle to the point of interest is updated automatically.
– When calculating the distance to a point of interest, the straight-line distance (empty arrow) is displayed first and then the actual driving distance (solid arrow). The points of interested are sorted according to straight-line distance from your current location.
– Some list entries cannot be displayed completely in the MMI display because they have too many letters/numbers. If you select these entries with the control knob, a separate window containing detailed information about the selected entry will open.

Entering a destination from the memory

Your previous destinations are stored automatically and be loaded directly as navigation destinations.

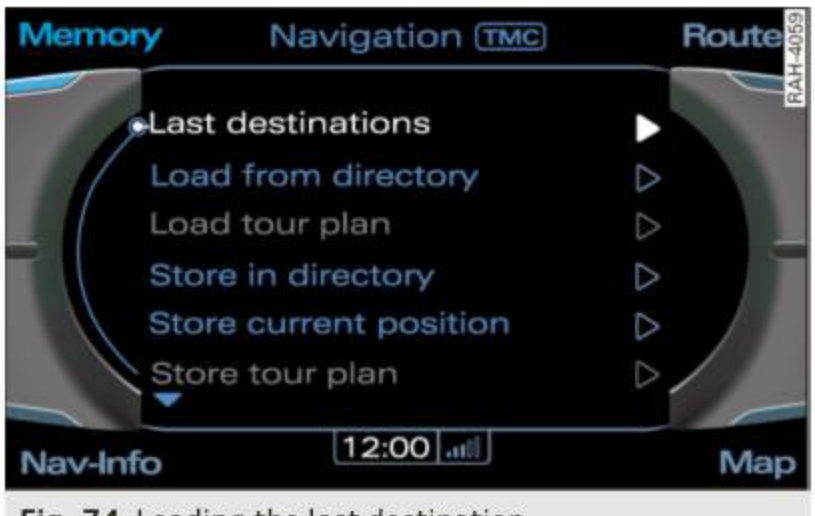


Fig. 74 Loading the last destination

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button ⇨ *fig. 74*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Last destinations** ⇨ *fig. 74*.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list with the last destinations you entered appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to select a destination.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The destination data is set as a destination/stopover.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

Tips

The list of previous destinations can be erased ⇨ *page 73*.

Entering a stopover

You can include up to nine stopovers and the end destination in the tour plan.



Fig. 75 Tour plan

Requirement: The Navigation mode must be started ⇨ *page 61*, a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 61* and the input field must be displayed ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69*.

Entering stopover with an address

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Add stopover** and press the knob. ▶

- ▸ Enter the stopover ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as stopover** and press the knob.
- ▸ To select the desired location in the tour plan, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

Setting a stopover from the map

- ▸ Press the **Map** control button. A map is shown in the MMI display.
- ▸ Select a stopover in the map ⇨ *page 62, fig. 72*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Set as stopover** and press the knob.
- ▸ To select the desired location in the tour plan, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

Setting a stopover from the memory

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Add stopover** and press the knob.
- ▸ Select a destination from the list of the last destinations you entered ⇨ *page 64*.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The destination data is set as the stopover.
- ▸ To select the desired location in the tour plan, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

To delete all stopovers from the tour plan, turn the control knob to **Enter single destination** and confirm the message in the MMI display with **Yes**.

Tips

Has your route or tour plan changed? No problem! Simply select the destination/stopover with he control knob and press the knob. You can now **Drive to this destination now** or **Change**, **Move** or **Delete** the destination/stopover.

Alternative route

Select your preferred route to a single destination from up to three suggested routes.

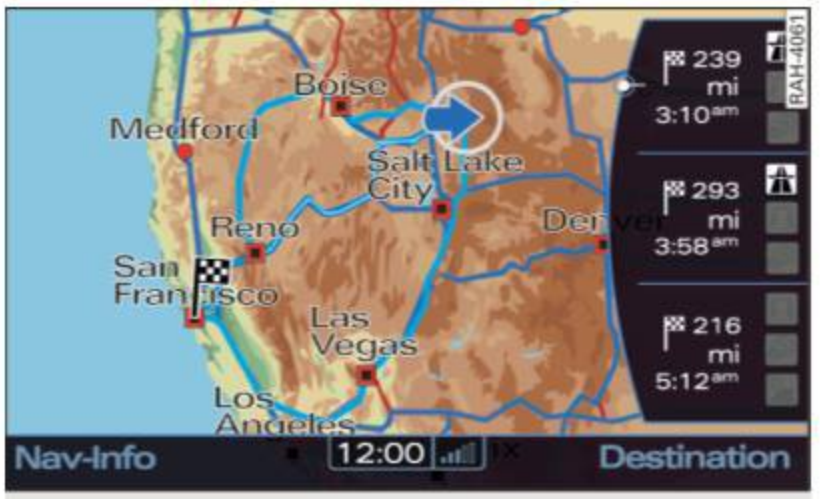


Fig. 76 Suggested routes

The route highlighted after switching to the map display is the route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected ⇨ *page 70*. For example, if you have selected **Short** in the **Route options** menu, the shortest route is highlighted. If possible, three alternative routes with the same route criteria will be offered for your selection.

The suggested routes and your criteria are displayed in the route side menu in the MMI display.

Information applicable to the route you have selected is highlighted in white:

– Distance to the destination and calculated arrival time
– Symbols for using highways, toll roads or ferries on the planned route

You can select the possible routing in the alternative routes by turning and pressing the control knob. ▸

Tips

The routes may overlap if there are only a few routes available to the destination.

Stopping route guidance

Requirement: Route guidance must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the NAV function button, or
- ▸ Press the **Destination** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Stop route guidance** and press the knob.

You can also stop route guidance by entering a new destination ⇨ *page 62*.

Tips

The data and settings remain entered when route guidance is stopped.

Display

In the MMI display



Fig. 77 Map with inactive side menu



Fig. 78 Map with active side menu

If you press the **Map** control button once route guidance has started, the map with inactive side menu ⇨ *fig. 77* will appear in the MMI display.

In this view, you can turn the control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the map scale. You can move the crosshairs in the map with the joystick to select a city ⇨ *page 24*.

Press the control knob to activate the side menu ⇨ *fig. 78*. You can now change the map display in the side menu. Turn the control knob to the desired location and press the knob.

Press the RETURN button to leave the side menu.

① Direction. The map is either oriented to the **north** or according to the **dir. of travel** ⇨ *page 71*. You can switch between north and the direction of travel by selecting the direction in the active side menu and pressing the control knob. This setting is saved.

② Scale. Turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale. You can also change the scale in the active side menu.

③ Distance to destination/stopover

④ Calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover

⑤ TMC status display

⑥ Altitude display

⑦ **Dest.** control button. Change to input field ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* or the tour plan ⇨ *page 64, fig. 75*.

⑧ Examples of selected map contents

⑨ Vehicle location

⑩ Display of the geocoordinates where the crosshairs are located (latitude and longitude)

⑪ If you select the map content with the crosshairs, available information such as the address, telephone number or traffic reports will be displayed.

⑫ Move along the route. This function can be used while route guidance is active. ▸

Turn the control knob to the left or right to move the map along the current route.

⑬ Map location menu. The location of the crosshairs can be set at the destination or stopover, stored in the directory or called up ⇨ *page 62*. The geocoordinates (latitude and longitude) of the crosshairs are displayed.

Tips

You can choose between four map types ⇨ *page 71*.

In the driver information system

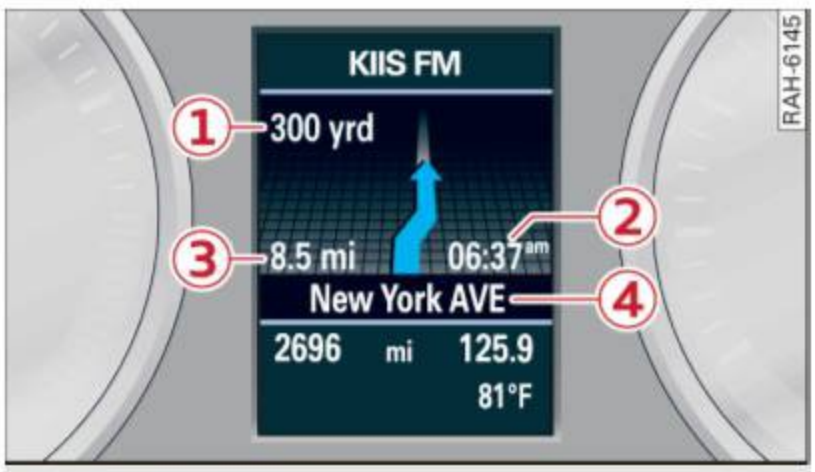


Fig. 79 Lane display



Fig. 80 Turn display

Once you have entered a destination or tour and started route guidance, the navigation information will be displayed in the driver information system. If you select another function such as the radio with the multifunction steering wheel, the navigation will be replaced with the selected function ⇨ *page 75*.

① Distance until change of direction
② Calculated arrival time
③ Total mileage to the destination/stopover
④ Name of the current highway or street. An arrow in front of the street name indicates that you should turn onto that street.
⑤ Maneuver arrow. An upcoming turn is also indicated.
⑥ Bar graph. A bar graph appears when a direction arrow is displayed. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

WARNING

The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Tips

An exclamation mark "!" in front of the street name indicates that the information about this street or this section of the route is not complete in the navigation data that the MMI contains. Obey traffic laws such as one-way streets or pedestrian zones.

Storing a destination

In the directory (single destination)

A single destination can either be stored as a new address car or assigned to an existing one.



Fig. 81 Address card

Requirement: You must enter a single destination ⇨ *page 61*. ▶

Storing a destination as a new address card

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store in directory** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **New entry** and press the knob. An input field appears ⇨ *fig. 81*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Name** and press the knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name with the speller.
- ▸ Enter additional data.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob.

Assigning the destination to an existing address card

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store in directory** and press the knob.
- ▸ To assign the destination to an address card, turn the control knob to an entry, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob to search for an address card. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter the name of the entry you would like to search for, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob in the speller to **LIST** and press the knob. All stored directory entries are listed.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the desired entry and press the knob. The address card opens.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store entry** and press the knob.

If you have already stored a destination for an existing address card, the new destination automatically overwrites the old destination.

Check the box for the **display as top destination** function to access the destination quickly. Top destinations are listed in the input menu ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* and can be selected there directly.

Tips

- You can use the **Edit directory** function to access the address card to enter more information ⇨ *page 48*.
- For information on managing the directory, refer to ⇨ *page 44*.

Storing a tour plan

Tour plans can be stored and loaded later as a new navigation destination.

Requirement: You have entered a tour plan ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Store tour plan**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. The speller appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Enter a name for the tour plan using the speller.
- ▸ Select **OK** in the speller and press the control knob. The tour plan entered is stored.

If the **Store tour plan** function is *grayed out*, either the tour memory is full or no tour plan was entered. Please delete any tours you do not need from the memory ⇨ *page 70* or enter a tour plan.

Loading a destination

Loading from the directory



Fig. 82 Loading a destination from the directory

Requirement: Navigation mode must be started ⇨ *page 61* and a navigation destination must be stored in the directory ⇨ *page 48*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Load from directory**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list of entries appears in the MMI display ⇨ *fig. 82*.
- ▸ To select a destination from the list, turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob, or
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Find entry** and press the knob to search for an entry. You can now search for a name using the speller.
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* with three possible routes ⇨ *page 65, fig. 76* are shown in the MMI display. An arrow appears in the driver information system.
- ▸ To select a route, turn the control knob to the left or right and press the knob.

Loading a tour plan

Stored tour plans can be loaded as a new navigation destination.

Requirement: Navigation mode must be started ⇨ *page 61* and a tour must be stored ⇨ *page 68*.

- ▸ Press the **Memory** control button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Load tour plan**.
- ▸ Press the control knob. A list of entries appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select a tour from the list, turn the control knob to an entry and press the knob, or
- ▸ To start route guidance, turn the control knob to **Start route guidance** and press the knob. The route criteria and then the map ⇨ *page 66* are displayed in the MMI display.

Display traffic reports in the map

Traffic reports can be displayed in the map.

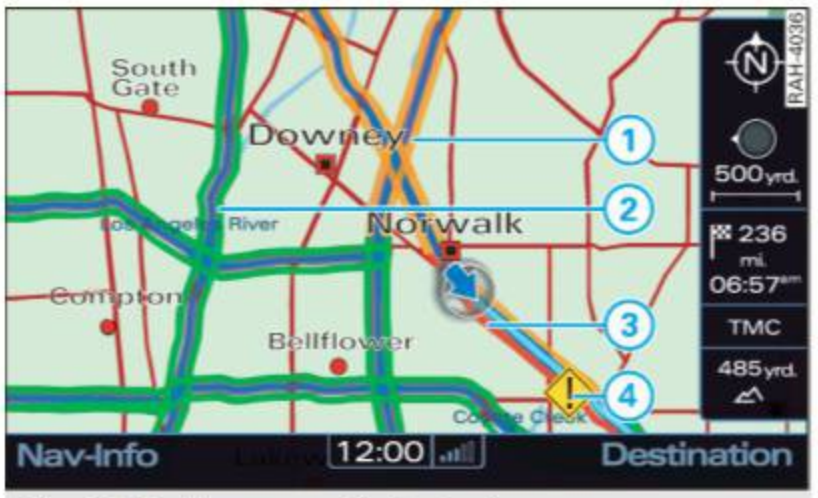


Fig. 83 Traffic reports display in the map

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Map content** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Traffic information** and press the knob.

The traffic information is displayed in the map with colored lines:

① orange lines: slow traffic
② green lines: free flow traffic
③ red lines: stop and go

A colored warning symbol ④ in the map indicates there is a traffic incident directly ahead.

In addition to traffic reports, you can also display (✓) or hide additional information such as expressway exits, 3D landmarks or restaurants in the map.

Tips

TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. Please contact Sirius Canada for details.

Additional settings

Top destination

- ▸ Select: NAV function button.

You can activate the **Display as top destination** function (✓) when storing a navigation ▸

destination in the directory. Top destinations are displayed at the end of the input field ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69* and can be selected directly when entering a destination.

Store current position

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Memory** control button > **Store current position**.

The current vehicle position is added to a new/existing entry in the directory.

Deleting a tour plan

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Memory** control button > **Delete tour plan**.

Stored tour plans can be deleted individually.

Route list

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Route** control button > **Route list**.

The route list is only visible when route guidance is active. It contains the following information:

– Information on the route characteristics
– Length of the route sections
– Street names

On longer route sections, additional information may be displayed such as possible junctions when driving on highways.

Route criteria

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Route** control button > **Route criteria**.

The route is calculated based on various criteria.

Alternative routes

The option to select from up to three suggested routes to a single destination can be switched on (✓) or off.

Dyn. route

When dynamic route is switched on, the route is adapted automatically[1)] according to traffic conditions.

If the system does not calculate a detour even though you have selected Dynamic route **on** and a traffic jam was reported on the calculated route, then the detour the system calculated would take more time than the time spent waiting in the traffic jam.

Route options

You can select a **short**, **fast** or **economical** route.

Highway/Toll road/Ferry

Select the **avoid** option if the navigation system should not include expressways, toll roads or ferries when calculating a route.

Tips

If avoiding a criterion makes route guidance impossible, that criterion will still be used when calculating the route.

Avoiding a route

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Route** control button > **Avoid route from here**.

When route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified. The navigation system calculates an alternative route.

You can adjust the length of the route to be avoided by turning the control knob.

When you restart route guidance, the area to be avoided must be entered again if you would still like to avoid it.

Tips

If the MMI does not calculate an alternative route, that means one is not available.

1) Only with a valid SDARS subscription.

Information

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Nav-Info** control button.

When route guidance is active, you will receive the following information about your destination:

– Receivable satellites
– Data about the vehicle location: current street, data about the geographical location of the vehicle (latitude and longitude, altitude)
– Destination city/stopovers
– Calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover
– Distance to destination/stopover

The last navigation announcement is repeated.

Calling: (telephone number)*

If telephone numbers for a point of interest are stored in the MMI navigation data and your vehicle is equipped with a *factory installed* telephone*, you can call the selected point of interest. For example, you can make reservations at a restaurant before you reach your destination.

Map display

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Map display**.

Day

The map is displayed with a light background.

Night

The map is displayed with a dark background.

Auto

The map display changes from day to night when the headlights are switched on.

Orientation

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Orientation**.

North[1)]

The map is oriented to the north.

Dir. of travel

The map is oriented to the direction of travel. At a scale of 100 km, the map is oriented to the north.

Auto

At a scale up to 1.5 miles (2.41 km), the map is oriented to the direction of travel. At a scale greater than 1.5 miles (2.41 km), the map is oriented to the north.

Map type

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Map type**.

Destination

The destination is marked with a destination flag. The map indicates the destination is oriented to the north.

Position 2D

The current vehicle position is displayed. The map orientation corresponds to the setting in the **Orientation** menu ⇨ *page 71*.

Position 3D

The current vehicle position is displayed in a three-dimensional terrain map. The **Dir. of travel** orientation is automatically selected ⇨ *page 71*. The map orientation is set to **North** when the scale is 100 km or greater. At a scale between 30 - 100 m, the display will show three-dimensional city models and landmarks.

Overview

The entire route from the vehicle location to the destination is displayed on the map. The ▶

1) Only possible in the 2D map type display

map scale depends on the length of the route. The map is oriented to the north.

Automatic zoom

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Autom. zoom**.

When automatic zoom is switched on, the map automatically zooms to the intersection. This provides a detailed display and makes it easier to recognize the streets. The map is oriented to the direction of travel when it is zoomed in. The three-dimensional city model is hidden for a short time.

Additional information

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Addit. info**.

On

The **Route** and **Exit** information is displayed on the map.

Route

Information on upcoming maneuvers or traffic reports are displayed in the left half of the map. The right half of the map continues to show the map display you have selected.

Exit

The left half of the map contains a window that shows expressway exits. The right half of the map continues to show the map display you have selected. Parallel to this, the window also shows an enlarged view of the intersection area.

The updated distance to the turn is displayed next to the enlarged view. The name of the street you will turn onto, the street number and/or name of the exit and the direction of travel are also displayed at the same time.

Off

No additional info is shown in the MMI display.

Voice guidance

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Voice guid.**.

The navigation announcements in the navigation mode can be **Complete** or **Compact**.

With **off**, only *important* announcements are played during route guidance. You can press the right thumbwheel ④ ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to play a navigation announcement.

Spoken cues (phone)

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Spoken cue**.

With the **Off (phone)** setting, navigation announcements play during route guidance but they do *not* play during a phone call.

Volume of spoken cues

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Volume of spoken cues**.

Turn the control knob to the left or right to adjust the volume of the navigation announcements. Press the control knob to leave the menu.

Presentation mode

▸ Select: NAV function button > SETUP function button > **Set starting point** or **Demo mode**.

You enter a starting point manually when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position, for example. Start demo mode to simulate route guidance. The demo mode helps you effectively plan and display a route by showing map contents or route criteria.

Tips

Route simulation guidance in demo mode is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons.

Deleting last destinations

▸ Select: NAV function button > **Memory** control button > **Delete last destinations**.

The destinations you have entered last are automatically stored ⇨ *page 64*. They can be deleted individually or all at once.

Calling up traffic information

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service

TMC traffic reports can be shown in the MMI display through Sirius* (satellite radio) ⇨ *page 32*. This happens automatically and silently. Even more practical is the fact that the MMI uses these messages when dynamic route is switched on to navigate around traffic problems such as traffic jams, when possible ⇨ *page 70*.

Traffic report reception is indicated by the **TMC** symbol in the title line in the Navigation and Info modes:

TMC symbol	Explanation
The TMC symbol is displayed	TMC stations are available and dynamic navigation is switched **on** ⇨ *page 70*.
The TMC symbol is crossed out	TMC stations are *not* available and dynamic navigation is switched **on**.
No TMC symbol	Dynamic navigation is switched **off**.

Calling up TMC traffic reports

Applies to vehicles: with Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service

The TMC traffic reports are sorted according to the distance from the current position. Traffic reports for an active route are displayed first.

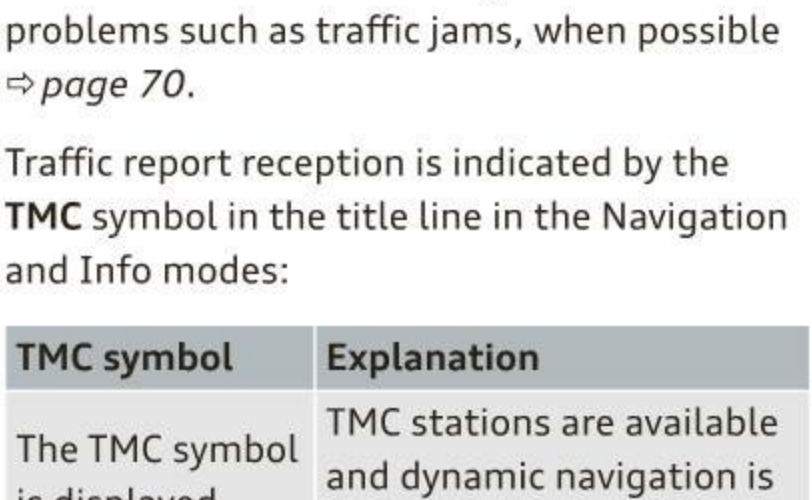


Fig. 84 Calling up traffic reports

- Press the INFO function button.
- Turn the control knob to an entry.
- Press the control knob. A detailed view is displayed.
- To call up the next traffic report in the detailed view, turn the control knob to **Next message** and press the knob.

When route guidance is active, traffic reports that affect your route are displayed in order based on distance and marked with a colored symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 84*. A traffic incident that is immediately head is displayed first.

All remaining traffic reports are listed last with a grayed-out symbol and sorted according to straight-line distance from the current position ② ⇨ *fig. 84*.

Traffic reports that are especially important such as a driver driving the wrong way are displayed automatically in the MMI display. Press the RETURN button or the control knob to cancel the report.

When route guidance is deactivated, traffic reports are displayed with a colored symbol and sorted according to distance from the current position.

Tips

– To use the traffic message channel (TMC), you must contract the Sirius* service provider ⇨ *page 32*.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. Please contact Sirius Canada for details.

General operation

Introduction

You can call up and control the MMI functions such as Navigation, Telephone, Radio, Media or the voice recognition system with the multifunction steering wheel.*

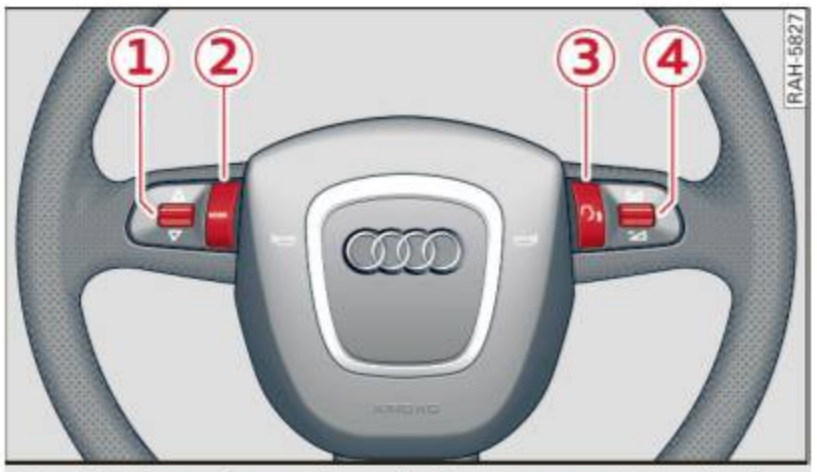


Fig. 85 Controls on the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 86 Display in the driver information system

With the multifunction steering wheel, you can control selected functions of the active audio source, telephone* or navigation with active route guidance without taking your hands off the wheel. It's very convenient!

The functions are shown in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 86*. You can also switch the voice recognition system on and off and change the volume with the multifunction steering wheel.

It is operated by pressing and rolling the buttons ① to ④ ⇨ *fig. 85*.

– Pressing the MODE ② button multiple times changes between navigation, the telephone* and the active audio source. The function is also displayed in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 86*. You can exit the submenu for the active function by pressing the MODE button.
– You can select a submenu for the active function by rolling the left thumbwheel ①.
– The voice recognition system is activated by pressing the Talk button ③. Pressing and holding the Talk button again ends the dialogue.
– Rolling the right thumbwheel ④ up/down increases/decreases the volume.

Tips

– You can switch the navigation display off with the Reset button on the windshield washer stalk. Comprehensive information on this topic can be found in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.
– The trip computer is also displayed in the driver information system. Comprehensive information on this topic can be found in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.

Adjusting the volume

You can change the volume of the active audio source and the navigation announcements with the multifunction steering wheel.

Requirement: The MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*.

Increasing and decreasing the volume

▸ Roll the right thumbwheel ④ ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* up/down.

Muting

▸ To mute the MMI, roll the right thumbwheel ④ down until a speaker symbol with a line through it appears in the status line in the MMI display. If the drive is active, it will be stopped.
▸ Roll the right thumbwheel up to deactivate the mute or pause function. The drive that was stopped will start playing again.

Navigation announcements

▸ Press the right thumbwheel ④. The last navigation announcement is repeated. ▶

▸ To change the volume, roll the right thumbwheel ④ up or down while an announcement is playing.

Listening to the radio

Selecting the radio



Fig. 87 Frequency band list

Requirement: The radio is on ⇨ *page 32*.

▸ Press the MODE button ② ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* until the radio menu appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 87*.

For detailed information about the radio function, refer to ⇨ *page 31*.

Selecting the frequency band

The three frequency bands FM, AM and Sirius (satellite radio) are displayed in the title line of the driver information system.*

Requirement: The radio menu is displayed ⇨ *page 76*.

▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* down to a frequency band.
▸ Press the left thumbwheel to select the frequency band.

Selecting a station from the station list



Fig. 88 Radio menu

Requirement: The radio menu is displayed ⇨ *fig. 88*.

▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* down/up to a radio station.
▸ Press the left thumbwheel to select the station.

Selecting a stored station

Requirement: The radio menu is displayed ⇨ *page 76, fig. 88* and a station is stored in the preset list ⇨ *page 34*.

▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Presets**.
▸ Press the left thumbwheel. The preset list is displayed.
▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to a radio station and press the left thumbwheel. The radio station is selected.

Playing media

Calling up media



Fig. 89 Track list

Requirement: The selected source must contain audio files. ▶

- Press the MODE button (2) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* repeatedly until a track list ⇨ *page 77, fig. 91* or folder structure ⇨ *page 37* appears in the driver information system.

For detailed information about the media function, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.

Tips

Select an audio source or a CD in the CD changer* through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 12*.

Selecting a folder



Fig. 90 Jukebox folder structure

Requirement: A folder must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 90*.

- Roll the left thumbwheel (1) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to a folder ⇨ *fig. 90*.
- Press the left thumbwheel to select the folder.

Tips

– To move to the next highest level, turn the left thumbwheel to the folder **Go up** ⇨ *page 77, fig. 91* and press the thumbwheel.
– You can scroll through long lists of folders quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of folders.

Selecting a track



Fig. 91 Track list

Requirement: Tracks must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 91*.

- Roll the left thumbwheel (1) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to a track ⇨ *fig. 91*.
- Press the left thumbwheel to select the track.

Tips

You can scroll through long lists of tracks quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of tracks.

Pausing/resuming playback

Requirement: And audio file must be playing ⇨ *page 37*.

- Turn the right thumbwheel (4) ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* all the way down to pause playback.
- Turn the right thumbwheel all the way up to resume playback.

Calling

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Calling in the vehicle has become an everyday activity. You can operate all of the relevant telephone functions safely and easily using the multifunction steering wheel.

The following messages could appear in the driver information system: ▶

Please wait ...	The connection between the MMI and the paired cell phone is being established.
No connection	There is no connection to the phone network.
Call	There is an incoming call. The caller's phone number will also be displayed if it was transmitted.
Busy	The number dialed is busy.
Automatic redial	The last number dialed is dialed again automatically after a brief waiting period.
Telephone is switched off	The telephone is switched off.
Connecting	The connection is established.
End call	The connection has ended.
No entries available	The directory does not contain any entries or the entries have not been read into the MMI.
Please connect phone	The telephone is not connected with the vehicle.

Would you like to learn more about operating the telephone in your vehicle? You will find a detailed description in ⇨ *page 53*.

Tips

- The telephone functions can only be controlled on the multifunction steering wheel if the telephone equipment was installed *at the factory*.
- The telephone functions depend on the cell phone and whether they are supported by your cell phone service provider or not. Refer to www.audiusa.com/bluetooth (www.audicanada.ca/bluetooth) for compatible phone list.

Selecting telephone

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep



Fig. 92 Telephone menu

Requirement: The cell phone package ⇨ *page 18* has been activated.

▸ Press the MODE button until the Telephone menu appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 92*.

The following options are shown in the telephone menu:

– Directory: contains the MMI directory entries ⇨ *page 44*.
– Dialed numbers: contains the telephone numbers dialed most recently.
– Missed calls: contains the most recent calls not received.
– Received calls: contains the most recently received calls.

You can dial the selected phone number directly from the call lists. Press the MODE button ② to close an open call list.

Dialing a phone number and ending a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Phone numbers stored in the directory and in the call lists can be dialed.



Fig. 93 List of directory entries

Requirement: The Telephone menu is displayed ⇨ *page 78, fig. 92*.

Calling

- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Dialed numbers**, **Directory**, **Missed calls** or **Received calls** ⇨ *page 78, fig. 92*.
- ▸ Press the left thumbwheel. A list with entries appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 93*.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to an entry and press the left thumbwheel.

Making another call

- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Hold** and press the left thumbwheel. The phone call is placed on hold.
- ▸ Press the MODE button ② ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* until the Telephone menu ⇨ *page 78, fig. 92* is displayed in the driver information system.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel either to one of the call lists or the **Directory** and press the left thumbwheel ⇨ *fig. 93*. A list with entries appears in the driver information system.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to the entry and press the left thumbwheel. All telephone numbers stored for that entry are displayed.
- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to a phone number and press the left thumbwheel. The phone call is made and the active audio sources is muted.

Ending a call

- ▸ Roll the left thumbwheel to **End call** and press the left thumbwheel.

If several phone numbers are stored in a directory entry, the list with stored numbers is displayed first when the entry is selected. Roll the left thumbwheel ① to the desired phone number and press the left thumbwheel.

When you have ended an active call, the call on hold remains on hold. Select **Resume** and press the left thumbwheel to resume the call on hold.

Tips

- – The multifunction steering wheel can only be used to dial stored telephone numbers. Enter a new phone number using the MMI speller ⇨ *page 54* or the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 85*.
- – The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
- – If you activate **Off (phone)** while in navigation mode, navigation announcements will not play during a call ⇨ *page 72*.
- – You can scroll through the directory entries quickly in blocks by rolling the left thumbwheel.

Answering/ignoring a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

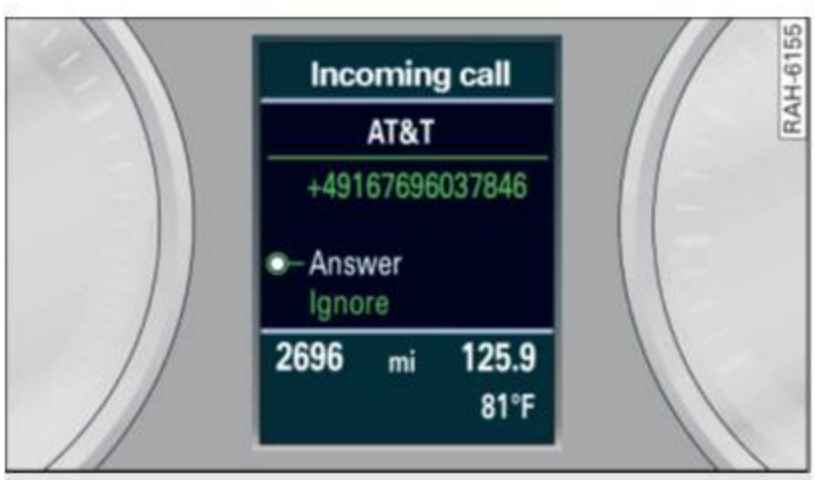


Fig. 94 Incoming call ▶

Requirement: There must be an incoming call ⇨ *fig. 94*.

Answering a call

- Roll the left thumbwheel ① ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to **Answer** and press the left thumbwheel.

Ignoring a call

- Roll the left thumbwheel to **Ignore** and press the left thumbwheel.

The *Name*, *Phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the driver information system display depending on whether the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

Options during a call

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

When there is an incoming call during an active phone call, the **Replace** and **Ignore** functions appear in the driver information system.

If you select **Replace**, the active call will be replaced with the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be ignored. A call on hold remains in queue.

Tips

The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone to be alerted to an incoming call during an active call. The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Navigating

Calling up navigation



Fig. 95 Navigation in the driver information system

Requirement: Navigation mode must be active ⇨ *page 61*.

- Press the MODE button ② ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* until navigation appears in the driver information system ⇨ *fig. 95*.

For detailed information about the navigation function, refer to ⇨ *page 60*.

Tips

You can switch the navigation display off with the reset button on the windshield washer stalk. Comprehensive information on this topic can be found in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.

Repeating navigation announcements

- Press the right thumbwheel ④ ⇨ *page 75, fig. 85* to repeat the last navigation announcement.

Name tag

Switching the voice recognition system on and off

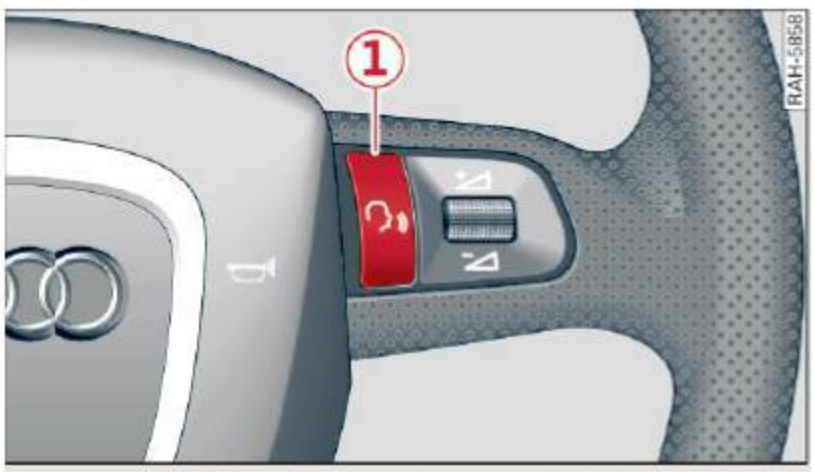


Fig. 96 Multi-function steering wheel: Talk button

Switching on

▸ Press button (1) ⇨ *fig. 96*.

Switching off

▸ Press and hold the button until the message **Cancel** plays.

The input signal **Beep** plays when the system is ready for dialogue. Then the desired functions can be selected using voice commands ⇨ *page 82*.

Tips

For a detailed description of the voice recognition system, refer to ⇨ *page 82*.

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- NAVIGATION
- TELEPHONE
- DIRECTORY

- HELP
- HELP VOICE RECOGNITION
- HELP NAVIGATION
- HELP TELEPHONE
- HELP DIRECTORY
- HELP MAP

- ENTER DESTINATION
- NAVIGATE TO (XY)
- CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE
- MAP
- CALL (XY)
- DIAL NUMBER
- REDIAL

TELEPHONE / DIRECTORY

- DIAL NUMBER
  - CORRECT / DELETE NUMBER
  - REPEAT
  - DIAL
- REDIAL
- CALL (XY)
  (BUSINESS / PRIVATE / LAND LINE / CELL)
- RECEIVED CALLS
- DIALED NUMBERS
- MISSED CALLS

- CALL (XY)
- NAVIGATE TO (XY)
- FIND ENTRY
- STORE NAME
- READ NAME

NAVIGATION / MAP

- ENTER DESTINATION
- NAVIGATE TO (XY)
- LAST DESTINATIONS
- ENTER COUNTRY
- ENTER ZIP / CITY
- ENTER CENTER
- ENTER STREET
- ENTER HOUSE NUMBER
- ENTER INTERSECTION
- START / CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE
- ENTER STREET IN VICINITY
- SHORT / FAST / ECON. ROUTE
- DYNAMIC ROUTE GUIDANCE ON / OFF
- ROUTE LIST
- VOICE GUIDANCE ON / OFF
- ENTER POINT OF INTEREST

- NEXT GAS STATION
- NEXT DIESEL GAS STATION
- NEXT PARKING LOT
- NEXT RESTAURANT
- NEXT ACCOMMODATION
- NEXT HOSPITAL
- NEXT AUDI DEALER
- NEXT POLICE STATION
- NEXT ATM
- NEXT COFFEE SHOP
- MAP ON / OFF
- POSITION 2D / 3D MAP
- DAY / NIGHT MAP
- DESTINATION / OVERVIEW MAP
- SCALE (XY) KM / METRE / MILE / YARD

Fig. 97 Voice recognition system command overview

Voice recognition system

Introduction

You can control many MMI functions through the voice recognition system.

With the voice recognition system, you can switch between the various modes easily by voice, for example for Navigation to Telephone*. In conjunction with hands-free operation it is not necessary to pick up the cell phone. The voice recognition system recognizes commands and numbers regardless of the speaker.

Individual training improves the recognition function of the voice recognition system by adapting it to your voice or pronunciation ⇨ *page 29*.

The voice recognition system automatically creates a name tag for each entry in the directory. Using the voice recognition system, you can select the private or business address of an entry as a navigation destination or call up the entry. You can also access other functions: you can call up call lists, view the route list for a destination or show the map view in the MMI display ⇨ *page 87*.

It is okay if you do not know a particular command. Simply say the command **HELP** when the voice recognition system is switched on. The system will tell you the commands that are possible at that time or give you a tip ⇨ *page 84*. For the most important voice recognition system commands, refer to the command overview ⇨ *fig. 97*.

In which language would you like to use the voice recognition system? You can choose from English, French and Spanish ⇨ *page 28*.

For the system to understand you

– Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when there is loud ambient noise.
– Pronounce the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
– Do not speak a command when the voice recognition system is making an announcement.
– Close the doors, the windows and the sunroof* to reduce ambient noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
– Do not direct the air vents toward the hands-free microphone that is close to the front interior lights.
– Only use the system from the driver's position since the hands-free microphone is oriented toward that position.

Unrecognized voice commands

The systems reacts to your input with audible feedback. If a voice command is not recognized, the system asks **Pardon?** and asks you to repeat the command. After the third unsuccessful attempt, you will hear the message **Cancel** and the dialog ends.

WARNING

– Please devote your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use voice recognition in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

Please note that the voice recognition system is not available in Cabriolet models.

General operation

Switching on and off

You can switch the voice recognition system on and off with the multifunction steering wheel.

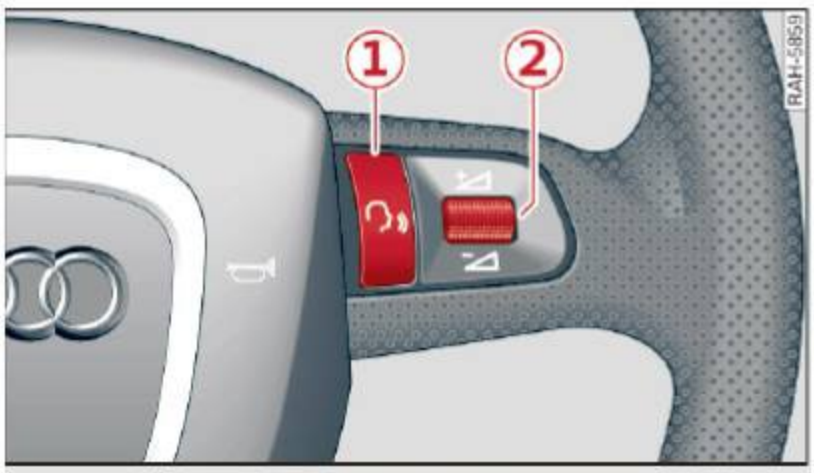


Fig. 98 Talk button and right thumbwheel

Requirement: The ignition and the MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 21*, the A/C system must not be operated and you must not have a phone call in progress.

- ▸ Press the Talk button ① ⇨ *fig. 98* on the multifunction steering wheel briefly to switch the voice recognition system on. The input signal **Beep** indicates that the voice recognition system is ready. The status symbol ① ⇨ *page 84, fig. 99* appears in the MMI display. An active audio source is muted.
- ▸ Say the desired command.
- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system off, speak the command **CANCEL**, or
- ▸ Press the Talk button ① ⇨ *fig. 98* and hold it down until you hear the message **Cancel**.

You can shorten a message by pressing the Talk button and speaking a new command.

Tips

- You can also deactivate the voice recognition system by pressing any button on the MMI control panel in the center console ⇨ *page 21*.
- Traffic announcements do not play during the dialog.
- The dialog stops when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog is cancelled if you answer the call.

Operating the system



Fig. 99 Help texts in the MMI display



Fig. 100 Selecting an entry from the list

Commands

The voice recognition system uses two types of commands:

- Commands for the active mode such as **LAST DESTINATIONS** in the **Navigation** mode
- Global commands (regardless of mode) such as **NAVIGATION**

The command overview ⇨ *page 82, fig. 97* provides an overview of the most important voice recognition system commands.

Selecting an entry from a list

The entries in a list such as missed calls, directory entries, street names, etc. are shown in the MMI display with item numbers ⇨ *fig. 100*. You can select a line by saying the line number, such as **LINE FOUR** or repeating one of the entries shown in the MMI display. You can also select a line through the MMI ▸

control panel by turning the control knob to an entry and pressing the knob.

You can scroll through the list displayed with the commands **NEXT PAGE/PREVIOUS PAGE** or **FIRST PAGE/LAST PAGE**.

Voice guidance

To switch voice guidance on or off during route guidance, say the command **VOICE GUIDANCE ON** or **VOICE GUIDANCE OFF**. Use the **COMPACT VOICE GUIDANCE** command to shorten the announcement.

Adjusting the volume

To adjust the voice recognition system volume with the multifunction steering wheel, turn the right thumbwheel (2) ⇨ *page 84, fig. 98* up or down while an announcement is playing.

You can also adjust the voice recognition system volume by pressing the **Sound** control button while in the radio/media menu ⇨ *page 26*.

Help commands

You can say a help command when the voice recognition system is switched on ⇨ *page 84*. Possible help commands are:

– **HELP**
– **HELP SPEECH DIALOGUE SYSTEM**
– **HELP DIRECTORY**
– **HELP TELEPHONE***
– **HELP NAVIGATION**
– **HELP MAP**

Say the command **BACK** to return to the main help menu.

System-guided help

If the voice recognition system is switched on ⇨ *page 84* but you do not give a command, the system gives the prompt **Please enter a command or say help**. If you still do not give a command, the voice recognition system offers possible commands.

Example of system-guided help (the telephone* function is activated):

Operation/ Commands	Voice recognition system announcement
Press Talk button briefly	Input signal: **Beep**
No command given	**Please enter a command or say help**
HELP	**Please choose one of the following topics. You can press the Talk button at any time to enter a command.**
	All telephone commands
	Important telephone commands
	Commands for phoning
	Commands for the call lists

Tips

– You can interrupt a voice recognition system announcement at any time by pressing the Talk button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 84, fig. 98* and enter a new command.
– You can also adjust the volume by the turning the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 25*.

Calling

Starting telephone mode

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The MMI telephone function must be active ⇨ *page 18* and the voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

▸ Say **TELEPHONE**. Telephone mode starts. The voice recognition system remains switched on for approximately five seconds to accept an additional command.

Dialing a phone number

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

▸ Say **DIAL NUMBER**. ▶

- ▸ Enter a group of numbers such as "**0-1-7-2-2**". The system repeats the block of numbers and displays them in the MMI.
- ▸ Say **DELETE** to delete the last block of numbers.
- ▸ Say **DIAL** to dial the number.

Tips

You can correct incorrect entries when entering a telephone number with the **CORRECTION** command.

Calling

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ To call the phone number stored in a directory entry, say **CALL (XY)**, for example **CALL "JOHN SMITH"**. The telephone number is dialed.

If several phone numbers are stored in an address card, you add the command **BUSINESS LAND LINE**, **BUSINESS MOBILE**, **PRIVATE LAND LINE** or **PRIVATE MOBILE**, for example **CALL JOHN SMITH PRIVATE MOBILE**.

Tips

When an address card is open, you can dial a phone number with the command **CALL PRIVATE** or **CALL BUSINESS** ⇨ *page 86*.

Additional telephone mode commands

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Accessing call lists

- ▸ Say **NUMBERS DIALED**, **RECEIVED CALLS** or **MISSED CALLS**. The call list is shown in the MMI display. You can dial a number by saying the line number.

Redialing

- ▸ Say **REDIAL**. The last number dialed is called.

Using addresses

Opening the directory

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **DIRECTORY**. The directory opens. The voice recognition system remains switched on for approximately five seconds to accept an additional command.

Using an entry

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Searching for/opening an entry

- ▸ Say **FIND ENTRY**.
- ▸ Say the name of the address card if prompted by the voice recognition system. The address card opens.

Calling up an entry

- ▸ To call the phone number stored in a directory entry, say **CALL (XY)**, for example **CALL "JOHN SMITH"** ⇨ *page 86*. The telephone number is dialed.

Navigating to an entry

- ▸ Say **NAVIGATE TO (XY)** such as **NAVIGATE TO "JOHN SMITH"**. If a navigation destination is assigned to an address card, that destination is entered and route guidance begins.

Tips

You can start route guidance when an address card is open with the commands **NAVIGATE TO PRIVATE ADDRESS** or **NAVIGATE TO BUSINESS ADDRESS**. You can also dial phone numbers with the commands **CALL PRIVATE** or **CALL BUSINESS**.

Storing a voice memo

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

The MMI creates a name tag for each entry in the directory. You can also assign up to 50 personal name tags for address cards.

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *page 86* and the voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **STORE NAME**.
- ▸ Say the personal name tag.
- ▸ Repeat the personal name tag if prompted by the voice recognition system. The personal name tag is stored in the MMI.

Name tags can only be stored using the voice recognition system. The name tags **do not** change the data stored in the directory.

You must repeat the name tag with the same pronunciation and volume. Assign clear, distinct names as name tags.

Do not include any long pauses in name tags.

Reading name tags

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

You can have name tags read.

Requirement: An address card must be open ⇨ *page 86* and the voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **READ NAME**. The personal name tag is read.

Tips

You can also listen to personal name tags for address cards through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 50*.

Deleting personal name tags

Applies to vehicles: with cell phone prep

Deleting in the address card

- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete name tag** and press the knob while the address card is open ⇨ *page 86*. The personal name tag is deleted.

Deleting in the SETUP menu

- ▸ Press the NAME function button. A list of entries appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ Press the SETUP function button.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete voice memos** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Delete individually** or **Delete all entries** and press the knob.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to **Yes** and press the knob to begin the deletion process.

Navigating

Starting navigation mode

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **NAVIGATION**. Navigation mode starts. The voice recognition system remains switched on for approximately five seconds to accept an additional command.

Entering a destination

The voice recognition system offers two ways to enter destinations: system-guided destination entry or entering individual commands.

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

System-guided destination entry

- ▸ Say **ENTER DESTINATION**. The input field appears in the MMI display ⇨ *page 61, fig. 69*.
- ▸ Say the desired city when prompted.
- ▸ Say the desired street when prompted.
- ▸ Say the desired house number when prompted, or
- ▸ Say **START ROUTE GUIDANCE** to navigate to the destination entered.

Entering individual commands

- ▸ To enter the country, say **ENTER COUNTRY** and say the country name.
- ▸ To enter the town, say **ENTER TOWN** and say the name of the town. ▶

- ▸ To enter the street, say **ENTER STREET** and say the complete name of the street, such as **NORTH FIFTH AVENUE**.
- ▸ To enter a street in the current town, say **ENTER STREET IN VICINITY** and say the complete name of the street, such as **NORTH FIFTH AVENUE**.
- ▸ To enter the house number, say **ENTER HOUSE NUMBER** and say the house number one digit at a time.
- ▸ Say **START ROUTE GUIDANCE** to navigate to the destination entered.

It may take a few seconds to search the location. The MMI display will then show a list of possible city names. You can select the desired location by saying the line number, such as **LINE FOUR** or turning and pressing the control knob. You can scroll through the list of location names with the commands **NEXT PAGE/PREVIOUS PAGE**. Because many countries have several cities with the same name, it may be necessary to select the city from a list again ⇨ *page 84*.

Tips

- – Once a city is entered into the input field, you can start route guidance to the city center by press the Talk button and saying **START ROUTE GUIDANCE**. You can also start route guidance through the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 62*.
- – You can also switch the voice recognition system on and enter a command during active route guidance and messages about driving maneuvers.
- – For additional information on navigation functions, refer to ⇨ *page 60*.

Points of interest

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

- ▸ Say **ENTER SPECIAL DESTINATION**.
- ▸ After the announcement **Please enter the search area**, say **IN IMMEDIATE VICINITY**, **IN VICINITY OF DESTINATION**, **IN NEW TOWN** or **NATIONWIDE**. A list with point of interest categories appears in the MMI display.
- ▸ To select an entry from the list, say the line number, for example **LINE TWO** or say the name of the entry. The point of interest is set as the navigation destination.
- ▸ Say **START ROUTE GUIDANCE** to navigate to the destination entered.

The following top destinations can be set directly as navigation destinations:

- – **NEXT GAS STATION**
- – **NEXT DIESEL GAS STATION**
- – **NEXT PARKING LOT**
- – **NEXT RESTAURANT**
- – **NEXT ACCOMMODATION**
- – **NEXT HOSPITAL**
- – **NEXT AUDI DEALER**
- – **NEXT POLICE STATION**
- – **NEXT ATM**
- – **NEXT COFFEE SHOP**
- – **NEXT AIRPORT**
- – **NEXT TRAIN STATION**

Tips

You can scroll through the list displayed with the commands **NEXT PAGE/PREVIOUS PAGE** or **FIRST PAGE/LAST PAGE**.

Map options

You can use the voice recognition system to control many map view functions in the MMI display.

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Map option commands include:

General options

- – **MAP ON/OFF** - The map is displayed or hidden in the MMI display.
- – **DAY/NIGHT MAP** - The map background is light/dark ⇨ *page 71*.
- – **ADDITIONAL INFO ON/OFF** - Upcoming turns with calculated distance are displayed when route guidance is active. ▶

Map type

– **POSITION 2D /3D MAP** - The current vehicle position is shown in a two/three dimensional map ⇨ *page 71*.
– **DESTINATION MAP** - The map shows the destination ⇨ *page 71*.
– **DETAIL MAP** - The current vehicle position is shown in the map with 1 km scale. This function is only available through the voice recognition system.
– **OVERVIEW MAP** - The entire route from the starting point to the destination is shown on the map ⇨ *page 71*.

Orientation

– **ORIENTATION NORTH** - The map is oriented to the north ⇨ *page 71*.
– **ORIENTATION IN DIRECTION OF TRAVEL** - The map is oriented to the direction the vehicle is traveling ⇨ *page 71*.
– **ORIENTATION AUTOMATIC** - The map is oriented in the direction of travel at a scale less than 2.5. At a scale greater than 2.5 km, the map is oriented to the north ⇨ *page 71*.

Zoom

– **INTERSECTION ZOOM ON/OFF** - The map is displayed in zoom mode at intersections ⇨ *page 72*.
– **ZOOM OFF** - Switched the activated map zoom mode off.
– **MAP LARGER/SMALLER** - The map display is changed.
– **SCALE (XY)**, for example **SCALE 5 km** - The map scale is changed. Available scales are 50 m, 100 m, 200 m, 500 m, 1 km, 2 km, 5 km, 10 km, 20 km, 50 km, 100 km, 200 km and 500 km. Units of measure are kilometers/meters or miles/yards.

Additional navigation commands

Requirement: The voice recognition system must be switched on ⇨ *page 84*.

Route guidance

▸ Say **START/STOP ROUTE GUIDANCE**. Route guidance starts or stops.

Calling up navigation lists

▸ Say **LAST DESTINATIONS** or **TOP DESTINATIONS**. Follow the instructions from the voice recognition system.

Dynamic route guidance

▸ Say **DYNAMIC ROUTE GUIDANCE ON/OFF**. Dynamic route guidance is switched on or off.

Route criteria

▸ Say: **FAST ROUTE**, **ECONOMICAL ROUTE** or **SHORT ROUTE**. The route is calculated according to various criteria, or
▸ Say: **ROUTE LIST**. The route list can be viewed when route guidance is active.

Navigating to a directory entry

▸ Say **NAVIGATE TO (XY)** such as **NAVIGATE TO "JOHN SMITH"**. If a navigation destination is assigned to an address card, that destination is entered and route guidance begins.

Tips

To switch voice guidance on or off when route guidance is active, say the command **VOICE GUIDANCE ON** or **VOICE GUIDANCE OFF** ⇨ *page 84*.

A

AAC files 9, 10, 13
Accepting a call 58
Activate your Satellite Radio service 32
Addit. info
  MMI control panel 72
Addresses
  MMI control panel 44
  Voice recognition system 86
Adjusting volume
  MMI control panel 26
Alternative route
  on/off 70
  Selecting 65
AM 31
Answering/ignoring a call
  MMI control panel 55
  Multifunction steering wheel 79
Aspect ratio 42
Audi music interface
  Connecting the adapter cable 14
  Repeat 39
  Starting 14
Audi music interface adapter cable 14
Audio source 37
Automatic zoom
  Voice recognition system 88
Automatic zoom (Navigation) 72
Aux-in connection
  Connecting/removing an audio device . . 17
  MMI control panel 37
Avoiding a route 70

B

Balance (sound) 26
Band 32
Bass (sound) 26
Bluetooth
  Bluetooth name 57
  Cell phone prep 18
  Delete Bluetooth devices 57
  Discover Mode 57
  Find Bluetooth devices 57
  Paired devices 57
  Switching on/off 57
Brightness
  MMI display 29
Buttons
  MMI control panel 21
  Multifunction steering wheel 75

C

Calling
  MMI control panel 53, 54
  Multifunction steering wheel 77
  Voice recognition system 85, 86
Calling up navigation lists (voice recognition system) 89
Call lists 58
  Delete 57
  MMI control panel 54
  Multifunction steering wheel 78
  Voice recognition system 86
Call options 58
Calls
  MMI control panel 54
  Multifunction steering wheel 79
Call volume 58
Care
  CD/DVD 8
  Memory cards 9
  MMI control panel 6
Category filter (Satellite Radio) 35
CD
  Ejecting 11
  Ejecting (CD changer) 13
  Handling tips 8
  Loading 11
  Loading (CD changer) 12
  MMI control panel 37
  Multifunction steering wheel 76
  Repeat 39
CD/DVD drive 10
CD changer 11
Cell phone
  with hands-free profile 19
  with hands-free profile (cell phone prep) 18
Cell phone package
  Calling (multifunction steering wheel) . . 77
Cell phone prep
  Calling (MMI control panel) 53
  Calling (voice recognition system) 85

Pairing cell phone 19
Searching for Bluetooth devices 19
Starting 18
Chapter (drive)
Next/previous chapter 39
Cleaning
CD/DVD 8
Control button 21
Control knob 21
Controls
MMI control panel 21
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Overview 5

D

Data password 30
Date 27
Default settings
MMI control panel 29
Delete Bluetooth devices 57
Deleting local call lists 57
Deleting recent calls
MMI control panel 57
Demo mode 72
Dialed numbers
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 78
Dialing a phone number
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 79
Voice recognition system 85
Dialing phone numbers
MMI control panel 56
Dialing stored phone numbers 56
Directory
Multifunction steering wheel 78
Directory entries
Cell phone prep 20
Directory entry
calling up (MMI control panel) 47
Calling (voice recognition system) 86
Change 49
Deleting 50
Editing 48
Importing 46
Navigating (MMI control panel) 48
Navigating (voice recognition system) 86, 89
Search/open (voice recognition system) . 86
searching (MMI control panel) 47
Store new 44
Voice memo 87
Directory memory capacity 52
Discover Mode 57
Display
refer to Driver information system 75
refer to MMI Display 22
Displaying track information 42
Driver information system 75
Drives
Audi music interface 14
Aux-in connection 17
CD/DVD 10
CD changer 11
File formats 7
Jukebox 9
Memory card reader 13
MMI control panel 7
DSP 27
DSP Bang & Olufsen 27
DTMF tones
MMI control panel 54
DVD 10
Ejecting 11
Full screen display 40
Handling tips 8
Loading 11
Main menu 40
Multifunction steering wheel 76
Parental control 41
Dynamic Navigation
Voice recognition system 89
Dynamic route
MMI control panel 70

E

Editing (directory) 52
Edit (directory) 49, 50
Ending a call
MMI control panel 56
Multifunction steering wheel 79

Entering a destination 61
Address 62
Alternative route 65
Avoiding a route 70
from the map 62
Loading a destination from the directory 68
Loading a tour plan 69
Load last destination 64
Point of interest 63
Setting a starting point 72
Tips 61
Top destination 69
Voice recognition system 87
Entering a point of interest
MMI control panel 63
Voice recognition system 88
Entering destination
Tour plan 64
with stopover 64
Entering stopover 64
External
Audio devices 16
Bluetooth device 57

F

Fader (sound) 26
Fast forward in a track (drive) 38
File formats 7
Files
Erasing 10
Importing 9
FM 31
Folder
Repeat 39
Selecting (MMI control panel) 37
Selecting (multifunction steering wheel) 77
Folder structure 37
Frequency 33
Full screen (DVD) 40
Function button 21

G

GALA 27

H

HD Radio™ (digital radio)
HD station info 34
Turning on/off 34
HD Radio™ (Digitalradio)
Frequency band 31

I

Importing a phone number 45
In-car entertainment fader 30
Volume 26
INFO
MP3 CD/Audi music interface 39
Sirius track information 35
Traffic information 74
Information (Navigation) 71
In immediate vicinity (point of interest) . . 63
In new city (point of interest) 63
Input level 42
Intersection zoom
Voice recognition system 88
Invert call lists 58
In vicinity of destination (point of interest) 63
iPod 15
MMI control panel 37
Multifunction steering wheel 76

J

Joystick 24
Jukebox 9
Erasing files 10
Importing files 9

L

Laser devices 8
Last calls
Multifunction steering wheel 79
Last destinations
Delete 73
Load 64
Loading from the directory (navigation) . . 68

M

Main menu (DVD) 40

Making other calls
Multifunction steering wheel 79
Manual location entry 72
Map content
MMI control panel 69
Voice recognition system 88
Map display 66
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88
Map options
MMI control panel 69, 71, 72
Voice recognition system 88
Map orientation
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88
Map type
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88
Map zoom (voice recognition system) 88
Measurement units 29
Memory card
Handling tips 9
Inserting/removing 13
MMI control panel 37
Repeat 39
Memory card reader 13
Inserting/removing a memory card 13
Missed calls
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 78
MMI 5
Components 5
Restarting 28
Switching on/off 21
MMI control panel 21
MMI display
Brightness 29
Joystick 24
Navigation display 66
Speller 23
Switching on/off 25
MMI Display
Standard menus 22
Moving stored stations 34
MP3
MMI control panel 37
Multifunction steering wheel 76
MP3 files 9, 10, 11, 13
MP3 player 16
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Mute
MMI control panel 25
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Muting
MMI control panel 25

N

Names
Navigating to a directory entry 86
Name tags
Calling directory entry 86
deleting 87
Erasing 29
Reading 87
Nationwide (point of interest) 63
Navigating
MMI control panel 48, 60
Multifunction steering wheel 80
Voice recognition system 87
Navigation announcement
Volume 26
Navigation announcements 60
Repeating 80
Volume 26
Navigation announcement volume 26
Navigation destination
Store in the directory 48
Storing 67, 68
also refer to Entering a destination 61
Navigation display
Driver information system 67, 80
MMI display 66
Nav Info (Navigation) 71
Next station
Radio (MMI control panel) 33

O

Options 58
Multifunction steering wheel 80
Orientation (map)
MMI control panel 71
Voice recognition system 88

P

Paired devices 57
Parental control (DVD) 41
Pause (drive)
MMI control panel 42
Multifunction steering wheel 77
Pausing/continuing playback 42
Phone book
refer to Addresses 44
Phone number
importing into the directory 45
Storing in the directory 56
Presentation mode
Demo mode 72
Setting a starting point 72
Presets (radio)
Moving stations 34
Selecting a station (MMI control panel) . 33
Storing stations 34
Presets (Radio)
Deleting stations 36
Preset (radio)
Selecting a station (multifunction steering wheel) 76

Q

Quartz clock 27

R

Radio
Category filter (Satellite Radio) 35
MMI control panel 31
Multifunction steering wheel 76
Station info (Satellite Radio) 35
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Radio clock 27
Radio station on the MMI control panel
Frequency 33
Next station 33
Seek 33
Selecting from the preset list 33
Storing 34
Radio station on the multifunction steering wheel
Selecting from preset list 76
Selecting from station list 76
Radio stations on the MMI control panel
Moving 34
Selecting from the station list 33
Radio text 35
Read error messages (CD/DVD) 8
Received calls
MMI control panel 54
Multifunction steering wheel 78
Receiver serial number 32
Recent calls
MMI control panel 54
Redial 58
Voice recognition system 86
Repeat 39
Repeating a command 29
Repeat options 39
Replacing a call 58
Multifunction steering wheel 80
Reset 28
Restart (MMI) 28
Rewind in a track (drive) 38
Ring tone volume 26, 58
Route criteria
MMI control panel 70
Voice recognition system 89
Route guidance
Changing 61
in the driver information system 67
In the MMI display 66
Stopping 66
Route list 70
Route options
MMI control panel 70
Voice recognition system 89
Route plan
refer to Tour plan 64, 68, 69

S

Safety 6
when calling 53
when navigating 60

Satellite Digital Audio Radio Service
Activate your Satellite Radio service 32
Category filter 35
Station info 35
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Satellite radio 31
Scrolling text 34
SD
Multifunction steering wheel 76
SDARS
refer to Selecting frequency band 31
Seek (radio) 33
Selecting frequency band
MMI control panel 32
Selecting source
Audi music interface 37
Aux-in 37
CD/DVD 37
CD changer 37
Jukebox 37
Memory card 37
Selecting the frequency band
Multifunction steering wheel 76
Selecting the language
MMI control panel 28
Selecting the menu language
MMI control panel 28
Set from last destinations 48
Setting a starting point 72
Setting the volume
Multifunction steering wheel 75
Setup radio
Category filter (Satellite Radio) 35
Station info (Satellite Radio) 35
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Show the next report 74
Shuffle 40
Sirius 31
Software version
MMI control panel 29
Navigation 29
Song information (Sirius INFO) 35
Sound
Basic settings 26
DSP 27
DSP Bang & Olufsen 27
Volume 26
Sound Focus 27
Speller 23
Spoken cues
On/Off (phone) 72
Volume 72
Start/stop route guidance (voice recognition system) 89
Starting
Cell phone prep 18
Starting navigation mode
Voice recognition system 87
Starting Navigation mode
MMI control panel 61
Starting radio mode 32
Starting telephone mode
Voice recognition system 85
Starting Telephone mode
MMI control panel 53
Station info (Satellite Radio) 35
Station list (radio)
Selecting a station (multifunction steering wheel) 76
Selecting station list (MMI control panel) 33
Update 33
Station name (radio) 34
Station sorting (Satellite Radio) 35
Stereo jack 16
Store current position 70
Storing a destination
in the directory 67
Subwoofer (sound) 26
Surround Level 27
Switching on/off
MMI control panel 21
Voice recognition system 84
Switching the microphone on/off 58

T

Talk button (multifunction steering wheel) 81, 84
Telephone settings 58
TEXT (radio) 35
Time 27

Tips
Caring for your MMI control panel 6
Handling CDs/DVDs 8
Handling memory cards 9
Traffic safety 6
TMC 74
Top destination 67, 69
Top destinations 48
Tour plan
Deleting 70
Entering 64
Entering stopover 64
Loading 69
Storing 68
Track
Repeat 39
Selecting (MMI control panel) 38
Selecting (multifunction steering wheel) 77
Track display 42
Track information 39
Track (drive)
Fast forward/rewind 38
Next/previous track 39
Traffic information 74
Traffic reports 74
display in the map 69
Traffic safety 6
Treble (sound) 26

U

Units 29
USB
MMI control panel 37
Multifunction steering wheel 76
USB storage device 16

V

Version
MMI software 29
Navigation software 29
Video source 37
VNC 27
Voice guidance
Off/Complete/Compact 72
Voicemail number 59
Voice memos
Storing 87
Voice recognition system 83
Adjusting volume 84
Command types 84
Deleting a name tag 50
Help 84
Reading a name 50
Repeating a command 29
Selecting an entry from the list 84
Storing a voice memo 87
Switching on/off 81
Volume 26
Volume
during a navigation announcement 26
Telephone 26
Voice recognition system 26, 84
Volume balancing 27

W

WMA files 9, 10, 11, 13

© 2010 AUDI AG

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. Text, illustrations and specifications in this book are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG. Subject to alteration or amendment. Printed in Germany.

Editorial deadline: 09/17/2010

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

MMI Navigation plus
Operating Instructions
Englisch Nordamerika 11.2010
112.562.860.21

www.audi.com